

**MCO 3501.29**

**Marine Corps Combat Readiness  
Evaluation System (MCCRES)**

**for**

**ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN  
VEHICLE UNITS**

**Volume X, Part C**

Signed 17 May 99

T. S. JONES

By direction



Maximize the Common Ground Mini Viewer window to fill the screen. From the View menu, select the Table of Contents option and choose a level of "zoom." Navigate through the document pressing the PgUp and PgDn keys, using the Go To menu, or by double-clicking on a Table of Contents entry.

MARINE CORPS ORDER 3501.29

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps  
To: Distribution List

Subj: MARINE CORPS COMBAT READINESS EVALUATION SYSTEM (MCCRES), VOLUME X PART C,  
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN VEHICLE UNITS

Ref: (a) MCO 1553.1B  
(b) MCO 1553.3  
(c) MCO 1553.5  
(d) MCO 3501.1C

Encl: (1) Mission Performance Standards (MPSs)

1. Purpose. To publish revised Mission Performance Standards (MPSs) at enclosure (1) for Assault Amphibian unit level training and evaluation.

2. Background

a. MCCRES was developed as a part of the Unit Training Management program to further assist FMF commanders to meet established training standards for mission performance, identify training deficiencies, and formulate training plans to increase combat readiness.

b. MPSs are mission-oriented collective training standards that establish the minimum acceptable foundation for operational performance by FMF units and elements.

3. Information. The references provide policy, assign training responsibilities, and establish the system by which MCCRES is implemented and supported within the Marine Corps. The enclosure, supported by the policies and procedures set forth in the references, provides the MPSs for use in evaluation of the combat readiness of assault amphibian units to perform combat operations.

4. Action. Commanders will:

a. Use the MPSs contained in the enclosure as guidelines for establishing training goals, training programs, and to prepare for formal readiness evaluations as directed by higher headquarters per the references.

b. When appropriate, use the MPSs for informal evaluations, and/or as an inventory to determine a unit's current training status and areas for future progressive training programs.

c. Make every effort to conduct evaluations when the unit is participating in their appropriate role as part of a Marine Air Ground Task Force (MAGTF) with adequate maneuver space. Assault amphibian units need ship-to-shore training areas of at least nine square kilometers at sea combined with an adjacent 12 square kilometers ashore with good trafficability and engagement ranges to practice Operational Maneuver From The Sea (OMFTS).

5. Submission of Recommendations and Requirements. Recommendations concerning the content of this Order are invited. Submit recommendations for additions, deletions, or modifications to CG MCCDC (C461) via the chain of command.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

6. Reserve Applicability. This Order is applicable to the Marine Corps Reserve.

T. S. JONES  
By direction

DISTRIBUTION:

Copy to: 7000110 (55)  
7230080 (20)  
8145005 (2)  
8145001 (1)  
7000144 (1)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION .....	10-1
<u>SECTION 10A - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION</u>	
MPS 10A.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS .....	10-A-1
MPS 10A.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS .....	10-A-7
MPS 10A.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE .....	10-A-9
MPS 10A.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-A-14
MPS 10A.05 NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS .....	10-A-17
<u>SECTION 10B - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMPANY</u>	
MPS 10B.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS .....	10-B-1
MPS 10B.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS .....	10-B-7
MPS 10B.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE .....	10-B-13
MPS 10B.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-B-23
MPS 10B.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES .....	10-B-26
MPS 10B.06 NBC OPERATIONS .....	10-B-37
<u>SECTION 10C - ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10C.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS .....	10-C-1
MPS 10C.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS .....	10-C-7
MPS 10C.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE .....	10-C-15
MPS 10C.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-C-30
MPS 10C.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES .....	10-C-32
MPS 10C.06 NBC OPERATIONS .....	10-C-42
<u>SECTION 10D - MINE/COUNTER MINE PLATOON</u>	
MPS 10D.01 ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS .....	10-D-1
MPS 10D.02 AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS .....	10-D-7
MPS 10D.03 SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE .....	10-D-15
MPS 10D.04 SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-D-29
MPS 10D.05 CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES .....	10-D-31
MPS 10D.06 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS .....	10-D-41

VOLUME X PART C  
MISSION PERFORMANCE STANDARDS  
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNITS

INTRODUCTION

This MCCRES is divided into four sections: section A contains the AAV battalion tasks, section B contains the AAV company tasks, section C contains the AAV platoon tasks, and section D contains the mine/countermine platoon tasks.

MCCRES MPSS establish the minimum acceptable standards to properly execute the AAV community's basic missions. Fundamental to the mission of the assault amphibian community is the battalion's ability to execute standard tactical missions listed in the MPSS table of contents. The tasks and standards within the MPSS are derived from doctrine, tactics, techniques and procedures, and recommendations from the operating forces.

The MCCRES and its MPSS have been developed with the goal of enhancing the training readiness of Marine Corps units. The system endeavors to accomplish this by developing a comprehensive series of MPSS for all function areas of the MAGTF. The MPSS's tasks and standards attempt to cover the basic missions an AAV unit is expected to perform in combat. The MCCRES is not an end "in and of itself" but a basis from which to prepare for fighting for "fighting smart" in accordance with MCDP 1 Warfighting. It is understood that only a certain number of these elements can be evaluated during any one exercise. Available training areas, environmental restrictions, units to be supported, external support, time and scenario will influence the number of MCCRES MPSS that can be evaluated. However, a series of exercises based upon evaluation objectives derived from a viable unit training program should expand the number of MCCRES tasks to be evaluated and assist in assessing a unit's overall combat readiness. Opportunities should be sought to evaluate those standards not evaluated in a given recent exercise. Keeping this in mind will help avoid the problem of going year after year with certain areas repeatedly not being evaluated.

Tasks are to be evaluated using the "90 percent rule". This rule allows the evaluator to score a "YES", when based on his observation the unit/element attempted and successfully met the standard's criteria at least 90 percent of the time. See the current edition of MCO 3501.1.

EVALUATOR

MCCRES MPSS for assault amphibian units presuppose that personnel and logistics support are sufficient to meet minimum acceptable standards; but it is acknowledged that sufficient people, supplies, and equipment are not always available. The unit is not penalized if they cannot attempt all the standards. When such external factors contribute to limiting a unit's combat readiness, it should be noted in the "COMMENTS" column of an evaluation sheet and recorded in the overall evaluation report.

ENCLOSURE (1)

**SECTION 10A**  
**ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION**

**ENCLOSURE (1)**

INDEX OF TASKS

	PAGE
<u>MPS 10A.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10A.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING .....	10-A-1
2) TASK 10A.01.02 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS .....	10-A-1
3) TASK 10A.01.03 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING .....	10-A-2
4) TASK 10A.01.04 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING .....	10-A-3
5) TASK 10A.01.05 OPERATE A COMMAND POST .....	10-A-5
6) TASK 10A.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING .....	10-A-6
<u>MPS 10A.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10A.02.01 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS .....	10-A-7
2) TASK 10A.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION .....	10-A-7
<u>MPS 10A.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE</u>	
1) TASK 10A.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-A-9
2) TASK 10A.03.02 OCCUPY A BATTALION SUPPORT AREA (BSA) .....	10-A-9
3) TASK 10A.03.03 SUPPORT FORWARD AAV UNITS FROM A BSA .....	10-A-10
4) TASK 10A.03.04 COORDINATE MINE/COUNTER MINE (MCM) OPERATIONS .....	10-A-10
5) TASK 10A.03.05 ENSURE CONTINUING ACTION BY MARINES ARE PERFORMED .....	10-A-11
6) TASK 10A.03.06 CONDUCT CONSOLIDATION .....	10-A-12
7) TASK 10A.03.07 CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATIONS .....	10-A-13
<u>MPS 10A.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10A.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS .....	10-A-14
2) TASK 10A.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-A-15
<u>MPS 10A.05 - NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10A.05.01 PREPARE FOR NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS .....	10-A-17
2) TASK 10A.05.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK .....	10-A-17
3) TASK 10A.05.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK .....	10-A-18
4) TASK 10A.05.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST .....	10-A-19
5) TASK 10A.05.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION .....	10-A-20
6) TASK 10A.05.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA .....	10-A-21
7) TASK 10A.05.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE .....	10-A-21

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- 8) TASK 10A.05.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-A-22
- 9) TASK 10A.05.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-A-23
- 10) TASK 10A.05.10 PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-A-25
- 11) TASK 10A.05.11 COORDINATE FOR THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT .. 10-A-26

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A.01 - NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): Given the mission to support tactical operations either as an attached unit or in direct support. Upon receipt of the order, the AA Bn begins the staff planning process.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Battalion staff conducts mission analysis of supported unit's mission to derive specified and implied tasks.
- .2 \_\_\_ Issues a warning order to subordinate companies based on commander's guidance. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Obtains intelligence data on the enemy, the area of operation, and the weather.
- .4 \_\_\_ Conducts a detailed terrain analysis (includes use of topographic products and aerial photography when available).
- .5 \_\_\_ Analyzes the armored, ATGM, NBC, and mine threat posed by the enemy.
- .6 \_\_\_ Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Develops courses of action.
- .8 \_\_\_ Develops a staff estimate of supportability for each course of action.
- .9 \_\_\_ Develops appropriate plans after receipt of the commander's decision.
- .10 \_\_\_ Issues the order.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AA battalion commander as he fulfills his basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commanders allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

---

TASK: 10A.01.02 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The higher headquarters unit has an intelligence section fully capable of providing intelligence support to the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Unit has and uses an SOP that provides procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses inter-operability with supported units.
- .2 \_\_\_ Identifies intelligence requirements.
- .3 \_\_\_ Requests intelligence support.
- .4 \_\_\_ Performs Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) analysis.
- .5 \_\_\_ Safeguards all classified material and limits access appropriately.
- .6 \_\_\_ Stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Ensures intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
- .8 \_\_\_ Unit is aware of the supported unit's Essential Elements of Information (EEI).
- .9 \_\_\_ Identifies the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10E.5.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR).
- .10 \_\_\_ Publishes daily changes of primary/alternate challenge/passwords; signs/counter-signs.
- .11 \_\_\_ Advises commander on counterintelligence issues.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of the collection means available.
- Understanding the intelligence capabilities and limitations of the unit.
- Emphasis on Operational Security (OPSEC) at all levels.
- Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
- Exploitation of information gleaned from POWs.
- Development of relevant EEIs and Operational Intelligence Requirements (OIR).

---

TASK: 10A.01.03 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct Electronic Warfare Support Measures (ESM) and Electronic Warfare Counter-Measures (ECM) operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Develops communications requirements.
- .2 \_\_\_ Demonstrates knowledge of external communications support available.
- .3 \_\_\_ Coordinates communication requirements with available sources.
- .4 \_\_\_ Develops concept of communications support.
- .5 \_\_\_ Corrects any interoperability problems.
- .6 \_\_\_ Develops communications plan (Annex K).
- .7 \_\_\_ Develops a security plan.
- .8 \_\_\_ Provides the supported unit's communications personnel with AAVC-7A1 briefing/training, if required.
- .9 \_\_\_ Advises on command post structure.
- .10 \_\_\_ Publishes communications plan.
- .11 \_\_\_ Unit demonstrates a knowledge of alternate communications methods. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

Units must:

- Demonstrate awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Be prepared to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire, when appropriate.
- Display full cognizance of importance of communications security.

---

TASK: 10A.01.04 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is assigned in support of tactical operations. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV assets. The mission requires the AAV Bn to support the forward deployed AA units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Identifies AAV Combat Service Support (CSS) requirements during the planning phase for forward deployed AAV units. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic supported unit.
- .3 \_\_\_ Identifies any logistics requirements beyond the supported unit's capability.
- .4 \_\_\_ Ensures vehicles maintenance/casualty recovery procedures are established.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 \_\_\_ Conducts liaison with the supported unit upon receipt of the mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ Determines availability and capabilities of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles.
- .7 \_\_\_ Ensures sustainment procedures are established.
- .8 \_\_\_ Determines required procedures are established.
- .9 \_\_\_ Operates a Battalion Aid Station (BAS).
- .10 \_\_\_ Determines the priorities of AAV support.
- .11 \_\_\_ Determines air delivery requirements for CSS, if available.
- .12 \_\_\_ Operates a Logistics Operations Center (LOC).
- .13 \_\_\_ Reports all changes in operational readiness to higher headquarters.
- .14 \_\_\_ Battalion staff coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistics requirements and establishes appropriate support arrangements with higher headquarters and CSSE.
- .15 \_\_\_ Support arrangements must feasible support the mission and address all equipment, personnel, and supply support organic to the unit.
- .16 \_\_\_ Coordinates with higher headquarters/CSSE as required for higher level logistical support requirements not within the capabilities of the unit.
- .17 \_\_\_ Coordinate contact team activities with supporting CSSE to ensure the contact teams become OPCON to the AAV Battalion's contact teams.
- .18 \_\_\_ Determine operational/thorough decontamination requirements and support needed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator examines the unit performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit logistics requirements include:

- Procedures for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedures for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedures for replacement of major end items.
- Unit Density List (UDL) submitted must include all assets organic to the unit.
- AAV unit logistics availability should include equipment status. Class IX parts, PEB, expendable materials, etc. on hand. Additional consideration should be given to maintenance administrative (MIMMS/SASSY), tools and test equipment, publications,

ENCLOSURE (1)

calibration, and scheduled Preventative Maintenance (PM).

- Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

---

TASK: 10A.01.05 OPERATE A COMMAND POST

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is operating a battalion Combat Operations Center (COC) and Logistics Operation Center (LOC) in support of forward deployed companies.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Organizes and operates the command post per unit SOP.
- .2 \_\_\_ Determines ability to sustain 24 hour operations.
- .3 \_\_\_ Staffs the command post with appropriate personnel.
- .4 \_\_\_ Ensures proper site selection.
- .5 \_\_\_ Identifies alternate sites in the event the Command Post must be displaced rapidly.
- .6 \_\_\_ Prepares plans for the establishment of forward CPs per unit SOP.
- .7 \_\_\_ Demonstrates ability to displace under any light conditions.
- .8 \_\_\_ Employs both active and passive security measures.
- .9 \_\_\_ Maintains control of movement within the CP.
- .10 \_\_\_ Locates bivouac areas and Helicopter Landing Zones (HLZ) to add depth to local security.
- .11 \_\_\_ Maintains positive/reliable communication with both higher command and subordinate units.
- .12 \_\_\_ Sufficient communication means are allocated to permit operations to be controlled on the move and/or at two separate locations during displacement.
- .13 \_\_\_ Passes control forward only after the new CP is capable of assuming control and notifies higher, adjacent, supporting, and subordinate units.
- .14 \_\_\_ Displace the CP without losing control and without interrupting the progress of the attack or support to subordinate.
- .15 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to monitor the progress of the battle.
- .16 \_\_\_ Subordinate units submit combat reports in a timely manner.
- .17 \_\_\_ Compiles information from subordinates and related activities to prepare Situation Reports (SITREP) and other required reports.
- .18 \_\_\_ Coordinates the logistic support of all elements.
- .19 \_\_\_ Establish a NBC control center with ability to sustain 24 hour operations, and operate a COC under NBC conditions, and establish a local NBC warning system.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV unit's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ Utilizes supported units operations SOP to establish required reporting procedures to higher headquarters. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_ The report, format, and submission type requirements are understood and are uniform.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ AAV unit SOP details any additional reports required for the organization.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ Establish/utilize JWARN connectivity for NBC warning and reporting.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the unit and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required" basis.
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.02.01 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is in support of a ground unit assigned to conduct an amphibious assault.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Conducts planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV representatives attend planning conference, as directed.
- .3 \_\_\_ Advises commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation.
- .4 \_\_\_ Embarks AAVs.
- .5 \_\_\_ AAV unit commander coordinates with Amphibious Task Force (ATF) representatives on preparation of landing documents. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Conducts ship-to-shore movement.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING DOCUMENTS

Ensure landing documents include:

- Landing plan.
- Assault schedule.
- Landing craft/vehicle assignment table.
- Landing diagram.
- Wave control.

---

TASK: 10A.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

CONDITION(S): AAV unit is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV representatives attend planning conference as directed. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Advises commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCE

Ensure that planning conference include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10A.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is ordered to coordinate link-up of AAV units with supported units at designated assembly areas. The movements can be conducted under any light conditions. The unit is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area, and be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Task organizes and assigns AAVs to units to be supported; provides their tentative locations and numbers of troops, weapons, ammunition, and supplies to be loaded.
- .2 \_\_\_ Issue Bn movement order to subordinate AAV units.
- .3 \_\_\_ Coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear unit control points, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc.
- .4 \_\_\_ Coordinates with the supported units Fire Support Center, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets.
- .5 \_\_\_ Ensures liaison is complete between subordinate units and supported units.
- .6 \_\_\_ Ensures details of vehicle markings are provided to the supported units in order for them to identify assigned vehicles.
- .7 \_\_\_ Ensures subordinate units link-up with supported units.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.03.02 OCCUPY A BATTALION SUPPORT AREA (BSA)

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion will plan for, and conduct, occupation of a BSA.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Coordinates the location of BSA with supported and higher unit commanders.
- .2 \_\_\_ Develops security plan for BSA.
- .3 \_\_\_ Coordinates designated routes (See #4 from 10A.3.1).
- .4 \_\_\_ Plans routes of march that offers the most cover and concealment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Issue battalion movement order.
- .6 \_\_\_ Dispatches a quartering party to the supported unit to coordinate arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area.
- .7 \_\_\_ Designates guides for assisting subordinate units to the assembly area.
- .8 \_\_\_ Ensures planning for defensive posture during static periods enroute to assembly area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .9 \_\_\_ Establish NBC detection capability and NBC warning system.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.03.03 SUPPORT FORWARD AAV UNITS FROM A BSA

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion H&S Company is configured into combat trains to support and sustain forward deployed AAV units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Establishes Lines of Communication between supported unit and AAV units.
- .2 \_\_\_ Establishes tactical command and control center.
- .3 \_\_\_ Dispatches liaison teams to CSS elements.
- .4 \_\_\_ Establishes contact teams for forward deployment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Provides security for forward deployed elements of the battalion trains.
- .6 \_\_\_ Conducts secure convoy operations.
- .7 \_\_\_ Coordinates rapid requests with liaison officers.
- .8 \_\_\_ Establishes forward salvage points, Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCPs), and Repair and Replenishment Point (RRP).
- .9 \_\_\_ Plans to displace and establish forward BSA to support maneuver element's scheme of maneuver.
- .10 \_\_\_ Is prepared to refit, rearm, refuel, and sustain forward elements including the Mine/Counter Mine (MCM) unit.
- .11 \_\_\_ Conducts recovery operations.
- .12 \_\_\_ Conducts Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) and repairs forward deployed AAVs.
- .13 \_\_\_ Establishes tactical radio communication with higher and subordinate units.
- .14 \_\_\_ Maintain logistic status of forward deployed AAV units.
- .15 \_\_\_ Maintain higher headquarters/adjacent tactical picture.
- .16 \_\_\_ Provide operational decontamination capability, to include MOPP gear exchange and vehicle wash down.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.03.04 COORDINATE MINE/COUNTER MINE (MCM) OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV battalion coordinates MCM platoon breaching operations in support of tactical operations, as requested by supported units.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Coordinates planning with higher headquarters.
- .2 \_\_\_ Coordinates employment with breach force element.
- .3 \_\_\_ Rearm/Refuel/Refit MCM platoon at established Refuel/Rearm Point (RRP) .
- .4 \_\_\_ Coordinates passage and link-up of MCM unit with supported units and breach force commander.
- .5 \_\_\_ Coordinates establishment of MCM routes and supporting fire.
- .6 \_\_\_ Plans amphibian breaching operations (Zero Wave), as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ Determine presence of chemical mines and take appropriate action before breach.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECON CASUALTIES

Decon chemically contaminated casualties to the maximum extent possible prior to evacuation.

---

TASK: 10A.03.05 ENSURE CONTINUING ACTION BY MARINES ARE PERFORMED

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is tasked to support tactical operations under light conditions varying from full to limited visibility.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Ensures implementation tactical discipline. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Ensures/Demonstrates dispersion.
- .3 \_\_\_ Enforces employment of cover and concealment.
- .4 \_\_\_ Reacts to direct fires.
- .5 \_\_\_ Reacts to indirect fires.
- .6 \_\_\_ Responds to enemy air threat.
- .7 \_\_\_ Ensures AAV safety rules are implemented.
- .8 \_\_\_ Ensure MOPP discipline is maintained and Marines react to to chemical attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

DISCIPLINE

The following individual discipline must be adhered to:

- Light.
- Sound.
- Sanitation.
- Hazardous materials handling.

---

TASK: 10A.03.06 CONDUCT CONSOLIDATION

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion has reached an objective, arrived at a new position, or restored defensive positions following an enemy counterattack. The battalion has received an order to consolidate.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Conducts initial planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ Develops a plan that takes full advantage of local terrain features and provides security.
- .3 \_\_\_ Coordinates procedures for the receipt of replacement personnel, supplies, and equipment.
- .4 \_\_\_ Coordinates CSS support activities and priorities of support.
- .5 \_\_\_ Conducts a detailed briefing of the plan to all key subordinates.
- .6 \_\_\_ Submits SITREPs to appropriate units.
- .7 \_\_\_ Establishes communications with adjacent units.
- .8 \_\_\_ Process casualties per unit SOP and in a timely manner.
- .9 \_\_\_ Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) per the SOP.
- .10 \_\_\_ Redistribute personnel, supplies, and equipment to offset any losses.
- .11 \_\_\_ Carry out replacement, resupply, maintenance, and other combat service support activities, as time permits.
- .12 \_\_\_ Displaces command and control facilities to control the consolidation and to facilitate the conduct of future operations.
- .13 \_\_\_ Submits reports to higher command, as required.
- .14 \_\_\_ Prepares for on-call missions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10A.03.07 CONDUCT CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is in support of tactical operations. Organic corpsmen are with the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV unit has a medical evacuation plan in place. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Bn establishes an aid station.
- .3 \_\_\_ Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of command.
- .4 \_\_\_ Wounded Marines' equipment is handled per AAV unit SOP.
- .5 \_\_\_ Establish procedures for chemically contaminated casualties.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MEDICAL EVACUATION PLAN

The following apply:

- The AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable, as required.
- Coordinate evacuation of post triage casualties.
- Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
- Marines tagged as lightly wound apply self-aid.
- Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes for evacuation.
- Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MPS 10A.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is supporting the forward deployed AAV units.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Conducts battle damage assessment and performs repairs, as necessary.
- .2 \_\_\_ Coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit, to include the location of, and route to, the recovery site. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Ensures disabled vehicle's ammunition and/or equipment are successfully recovered/evacuated.
- .4 \_\_\_ NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Provide replacement vehicle(s), if tactically required.
- .6 \_\_\_ Ensure personnel are knowledgeable of AAV destruction methods when casualty vehicles are beyond recover/salvage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The battalion staff will ensure the recovery crew:

- Coordinates with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
- Identifies location and plans a route to vehicle/equipment.
- Locates vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
- Ensures security augmentation, if tactically required.
- Adheres to safety regulations.
- Evacuates casualty AAV to CSSE when possible.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OF CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopts MOPP 4 and buttons up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
- Selects route that minimizes exposure.
- Rigs for evacuation.
- Recovers vehicle/equipment and evacuates it to the Equipment Decontamination Site (EDS).
- Assists EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Evacuates to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

---

TASK: 10A.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AA battalion is tasked to support tactical operations either afloat and/or on land. Initial planning and logistical planning has been completed, as well as liaison with higher headquarters and CSSE. Sustainment operations are to be conducted in all weather/light conditions. Final preparations for supportability have been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Provides third, and when authorized, fourth echelon maintenance capability.
- .2 \_\_\_ Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood.
- .3 \_\_\_ Trained unit maintenance personnel and/or maintenance contact teams are located well forward and readily available to the AAV units. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ Recovery, refueling, and resupply are conducted, as necessary.
- .5 \_\_\_ Conducts Repair and Replacement Point operations.
- .6 \_\_\_ Conducts Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP).
- .7 \_\_\_ AAV Bn has verified and inspected packaged and prepared mount out blocks of 2nd and 3rd echelon repair parts to include SECREPS, if possible.
- .8 \_\_\_ AAV Bn carries an operational block of supplies to include Pre-Expended Bin (PEB), Preventative Maintenance (PM), expendable materials, etc., for all equipment organic to the battalion while deployed.
- .9 \_\_\_ Carries initial issue quantities of SECREPs for AAVs deployed.
- .10 \_\_\_ Conduct supply and maintenance operations in an NBC environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander (TEC), inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.
- Perform supply responsibilities.
- Conduct Battle Damage Assessment (BDA).

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- Maintains inventory of technical publications related to organic equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10A.05 - NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10A.05.01 PREPARE FOR NBC DEFENSE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV unit possesses an SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports.
- .2 \_\_\_ All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the unit Table of Equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual.
- .3 \_\_\_ All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to designated and trained/knowledgeable operators.
- .4 \_\_\_ Shortages are identified and replacement actions are taken.
- .5 \_\_\_ Decontamination equipment (mops, brooms, shovels, rags, etc.) and bulk decontaminates are assembled and prepared for ready transport to a decontamination area.
- .6 \_\_\_ Decontamination equipment is prepared for use.
- .7 \_\_\_ MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level.
- .8 \_\_\_ Company/Platoon commanders are able to utilize the appropriate detectors and report the readings to higher headquarters.
- .9 \_\_\_ Unit leaders thoroughly understand MOPP for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards.
- .10 \_\_\_ Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination markers.
- .11 \_\_\_ Maximizes the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the unit information to expect an imminent nuclear attack by the enemy, and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.05.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): AAV unit is informed that nuclear weapons have been used in the theater of operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Subordinate/Displaced elements are alerted (if applicable).
- .2 \_\_\_ Continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission.
- .4 \_\_\_ Personnel minimizes exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two layered uniform.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bushes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.).
- .6 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE). (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Periodic monitoring is initiated using the appropriate radiac set.
- .8 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .9 \_\_\_ All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from heat, blast, and radiation.
- .10 \_\_\_ Marines are familiar with standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: Turn all electronic equipment off in accordance with SOP.

---

TASK: 10A.05.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Nuclear attack is simulated by the detonation of an artillery blast simulator or by other appropriate means.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission, if possible.
- .3 \_\_\_ NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded by secure means, when possible.
- .4 \_\_\_ Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point.
- .5 \_\_\_ Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP.
- .6 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is initiated using the appropriate radiac set.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator will assess constructive casualties due to blast, heat, radiation, and ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.05.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface nuclear detonation has occurred. The AAV unit location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The unit gets effective downwind messages at least once every 12 hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is prepared by the unit within 15 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about four hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Unit mission is performed concurrently with all other actions.
- .2 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival, and subordinate units are notified.
- .3 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is maintained using the appropriate radiac set.
- .4 \_\_\_ Equipment, munitions, Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants (POL), food, and water are protected from fallout.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel takes protective measures to minimize fallout effects. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means.
- .7 \_\_\_ Unit total dose information is measured using the appropriate radiac equipment and reported to the supported command element using available secure means.
- .8 \_\_\_ Exposure is minimized while the command element determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary.
- .9 \_\_\_ Personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment.
- .10 \_\_\_ Casualties and fatalities are assessed.
- .11 \_\_\_ Vehicles are assessed for damage.
- .12 \_\_\_ Determine Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG). Unit conducts survey mission as required and forwarded NBC-4 reports, and completed detailed fallout prediction.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

---

TASK: 10A.05.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are contaminated. The hazard to personnel do not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits operational decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Decontamination priorities are established.
- .2 \_\_\_ A operational decontamination point is established out of the contaminated area.
- .3 \_\_\_ Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is tactical.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Decontamination equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Contaminated area is marked with NATO standard NBC markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the appropriate radiac equipment.
- .8 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to higher headquarters.
- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel are decontaminated, as necessary.
- .10 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .11 \_\_\_ Total dose information for the operational decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the appropriate radiac equipment to higher headquarters.
- .12 \_\_\_ Runoff from decon site is controlled, and location of decon site is reported to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. If the contaminant is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

---

TASK: 10A.05.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation forces the AAV unit to cross a radiologically contaminated area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Reconnaissance element is provided the turnback dose rate.
- .2 \_\_\_ Reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
- .4 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .5 \_\_\_ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the appropriate radiac equipment.
- .6 \_\_\_ Decontamination priorities are established and performed, as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ Unit total dose information is recorded, using, appropriate radiac equipment and reported to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the AAV unit with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.05.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): Unit receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM 21-40, pages 6-24 and 6-15. The AAV unit is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt.
- .2 \_\_\_ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is available to the unit.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicated fallout zone).
- .4 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_ Personnel minimizes exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two-layered uniform.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground.
- .8 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind making terrain.
- .9 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE). (KI)
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items (small weapons, tools etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters.
- .11 \_\_\_ Acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All attachments have been warned and protective measures implemented.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery blast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS: Turn off all electronic equipment in accordance with unit SOP.

---

TASK: 10A.05.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): AAV unit is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Uses a chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical defense/decontamination procedures.
- .2 \_\_\_ All elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and commander's guidance.
- .3 \_\_\_ Mission-essential tasks that require a high degree of manual dexterity or physical strength, and are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods, such as allowing more time, rotating, or assigning additional personnel, are planned.
- .4 \_\_\_ Marines identify criteria for and demonstrate the capabilities for donning the protective mask and chemical protective ensemble.
- .5 \_\_\_ The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination.
- .6 \_\_\_ Continues the mission while implementing all actions to minimize casualties and damage.
- .7 \_\_\_ Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter halves, or ponchos.
- .8 \_\_\_ Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination kits are checked, individuals have complete decontamination kits and there is an available water source with a supporting road network.
- .10 \_\_\_ Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher headquarters.
- .11 \_\_\_ Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored.
- .12 \_\_\_ Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability.
- .13 \_\_\_ Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms.
- .14 \_\_\_ Radio operators pass and receive alter/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask.
- .15 \_\_\_ Establish an identification system while in MOPP.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10A.05.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): AAV unit is subjected to a chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon hearing a chemical alarm, personnel take immediate protective measures, and pass the alarm followed by treatment/decontamination of casualties.
- .2 \_\_\_ Personnel automatically mask upon notification of any enemy artillery, rocket, or air attack/over flight or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source.
- .3 \_\_\_ Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV unit is able to perform mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4.
- .5 \_\_\_ Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit cam or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit.
- .6 \_\_\_ Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element.
- .8 \_\_\_ Unit determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible, consistent with the mission.
- .9 \_\_\_ Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested, if required.
- .10 \_\_\_ WIAs are decontaminated, wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facilities are alerted.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .11 \_\_\_ KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is alerted.
- .12 \_\_\_ Unmasking procedure is followed.
- .13 \_\_\_ WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as mission permits.
- .14 \_\_\_ KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits.
- .15 \_\_\_ Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation.
- .16 \_\_\_ Expended chemical defense items are replaced, as required.
- .17 \_\_\_ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.
- .18 \_\_\_ Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties". Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well-supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available:
  - a. Use the detector at different points in the perimeter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
  - b. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for five minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade. Weapons are removed from individuals prior to unmasking.
  - c. If no symptoms appear, unmasking unit will accomplish this by 1/3 on the unit intervals. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

ENCLOSURE (1)

2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:

- a. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
- b. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for the next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
- c. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseat their masks. Weapons are removed from the individuals prior to unmasking.
- d. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marine unmask for five minutes, and then remask.
- e. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

---

TASK: 10A.05.10 PERFORM OPERATIONAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that operational decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits.
- .2 \_\_\_ Extent of decontamination is determined and decontamination priorities are established.
- .3 \_\_\_ Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or discarded.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Conducts, operational decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.
- .6 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate:
  - a. Procedures are repeated.
  - b. Decontamination support is requested.
  - c. Risk of using equipment is accepted.
- .7 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher headquarters.
- .8 \_\_\_ OIC reduces MOPP level, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

1. Initial decontamination of unit equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
  - a. Removing all gross liquid contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
  - b. Apparatuses filled with the appropriate decontamination agents to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment).
2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
  - a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
  - b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaked DS2 (water is used for training purpose).
  - c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.
4. Operational decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.
  - a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require a decontamination apparatus be requested from higher headquarters.
  - b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within 6 hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once unmasking procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP IV posture.

---

TASK: 10A.05.11 COORDINATE FOR THOROUGH DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): AAV unit equipment has been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for a thorough decontamination and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ Coordination is made with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished by the contaminated unit, and the estimated time of completion is established.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ Requests and receives route clearance to Detailed Troop Decontamination/Detailed Equipment Decontamination (DTD/DED) assembly area. Advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is dispatched to PDS/EDS.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ Main body arrives at DTD/DED assembly area and organizes for processing.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination begins as scheduled.
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

SECTION 10B  
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMPANY

ENCLOSURE (1)

INDEX OF TASKS

	PAGE
<u>MPS 10B.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10B.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING .....	10-B-1
2) TASK 10B.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT .....	10-B-2
3) TASK 10B.01.03 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS .....	10-B-3
4) TASK 10B.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING .....	10-B-4
5) TASK 10B.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING .....	10-B-4
6) TASK 10B.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING .....	10-B-6
<u>MPS 10B.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10B.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING .....	10-B-7
2) TASK 10B.02.02 PREPARES FOR EMBARKATION .....	10-B-8
3) TASK 10B.02.03 EMBARK AAVS .....	10-B-9
4) TASK 10B.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION .....	10-B-9
5) TASK 10B.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION AND SHIP-TO-SHORE MOVEMENT .....	10-B-10
<u>MPS 10B.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE</u>	
1) TASK 10B.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-B-13
2) TASK 10B.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-B-13
3) TASK 10B.03.03 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES .....	10-B-16
4) TASK 10B.03.04 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT .....	10-B-16
5) TASK 10B.03.06 PLAN AN IN-STRIDE BREACH .....	10-B-17
6) TASK 10B.03.07 CONDUCT BREACHING OF A MINEFIELD .....	10-B-17
7) TASK 10B.03.08 CONDUCT NIGHT OPERATIONS .....	10-B-18
8) TASK 10B.03.09 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS .....	10-B-19
9) TASK 10B.03.10 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE .....	10-B-20
10) TASK 10B.03.11 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN .....	10-B-21
11) TASK 10B.03.12 SUPPORTS COMMAND AND CONTROL FROM ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMMAND VEHICLE, AAVC7A1 .....	10-B-22
<u>MPS 10B.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10B.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS .....	10-B-23
2) TASK 10B.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS .....	10-B-24

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

- 1) TASK 10B.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE ..... 10-B-26
- 2) TASK 10B.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE ..... 10-B-26
- 3) TASK 10B.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION ..... 10-B-27
- 4) TASK 10B.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT ..... 10-B-28
- 5) TASK 10B.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES ..... 10-B-28
- 6) TASK 10B.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE ..... 10-B-29
- 7) TASK 10B.05.07 ESTABLISHES TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION ..... 10-B-29
- 8) TASK 10B.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) ..... 10-B-30
- 9) TASK 10B.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT ..... 10-B-31
- 10) TASK 10B.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR ..... 10-B-33
- 11) TASK 10B.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS ..... 10-B-34
- 12) TASK 10B.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS ..... 10-B-35

MPS 10B.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

- 1) TASK 10B.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS ..... 10-B-37
- 2) TASK 10B.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK ..... 10-B-37
- 3) TASK 10B.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK ..... 10-B-38
- 4) TASK 10B.06.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST ..... 10-B-39
- 5) TASK 10B.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-B-40
- 6) TASK 10B.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA ..... 10-B-41
- 7) TASK 10B.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE ..... 10-B-41
- 8) TASK 10B.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-B-42
- 9) TASK 10B.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-B-43
- 10) TASK 10B.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-B-45
- 11) TASK 10B.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT .. 10-B-46

MPS 10B.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is given the mission to support tactical operations either as an attached unit or in direct support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV company commander immediately reports to the supported commander for planning as a special staff officer.
- .2 \_\_\_ Conducts analysis of supported unit's mission as part of staff planning.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company staff demonstrates effective use of planning time. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ Obtains intelligence data from supported unit on the enemy, the area of operation, and the weather.
- .5 \_\_\_ Conducts Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB) as special officer to include detailed threat and terrain analysis (maximize use of all available intelligence resources).
- .6 \_\_\_ Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Assists in the development of courses of action as special staff officer. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ Develops an AAV estimate of supportability as part of course of action development.
- .9 \_\_\_ Issues a warning order to subordinate.
- .10 \_\_\_ Conducts a leaders reconnaissance with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAVs are fully integrated into the supported unit's plan.
- .11 \_\_\_ As special staff officer, AAV commander develops appropriate plans after supported commander selects course of action.
- .12 \_\_\_ AAV company commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order.
- .13 \_\_\_ AAV unit commander issues an operations order.
- .14 \_\_\_ AAV Company CO establishes procedures and reports all changes in combat readiness to the supported unit and parent unit, if applicable. (KI)
- .15 \_\_\_ Company staff coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangements. (KI)
- .16 \_\_\_ Company coordinates with the supported unit's communications officer to ensure frequencies are allocated that and the AAV unit possess the correct key lists, edition numbers, Net IDs, and FH data.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AAV company commander as he fulfills his basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commanders allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27 in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support, the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority to any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control and logistics responsibility. The support arrangements must feasibly support the mission and address all equipment organic to the unit.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the following factors:

- Cover and concealment.
- Overwatch positions.
- Likely enemy ATGM and armor positions.
- Areas requiring dismounted occupation before exposing.
- Suitable approaches to objectives, withdrawal routes, and natural barriers/obstacles.
- Minefields and obstacles.
- Bridges and river crossing sites.
- Dust signature areas and rubble in built-up areas.

---

TASK: 10B.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship-to-shore and/or operate on land.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ AAV company provides input from the AAV unit SOP for mechanized and waterborne operations.
- .2 \_\_\_\_ Company staff complies with the supported unit's operation order.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ Company responds immediately to orders issued by the supported unit command element.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order.
- .5 \_\_\_ Company staff provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements concerning AAV utilization.
- .6 \_\_\_ Company submits operational reports, per the operations order in a timely manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator determines when the AAV company received a copy of the supported unit's operations SOP.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.01.03 COORDINATE INTELLIGENCE FUNCTIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported unit has an S-2 section fully capable of providing intelligence support to the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company uses proper procedures for handling and safeguarding intelligence matters, and addresses interoperability with supported units.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company staff stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Company staff ensures intelligence information is disseminated to subordinate elements.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company is aware of the supported unit's Essential Elements of Information (EEIs).
- .5 \_\_\_ Company knows the procedures to be used in handling EPWS (See Task 10E.5.10 PROCESS PRISONERS OF WAR).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of the collection means available, both friendly and enemy.
  - Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.
  - Emphasis on OPSEC at all levels.
  - Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
  - Exploitation of information gleaned from EPWS.
  - Development of relevant EEIs and OIRs.
- 

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

TASK: 10B.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company commander ensures coordination with supported unit's communications officer.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company staff identifies all communications nets required.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company staff ensures an adequate number of frequencies are allocated.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company commander or representative plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity.
- .5 \_\_\_ Company commander or his representative plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow for brevity.
- .6 \_\_\_ Company identifies any interoperability problems.
- .7 \_\_\_ Commander stresses communication security awareness for all personnel.
- .8 \_\_\_ Company staff ensures the communications plan reflects secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies the AAV unit has them.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company stresses use of wire communications when appropriate in static or defensive positions.
- .10 \_\_\_ The company staff provides the supported unit's staff and communications personnel with AAV-7A1 briefing/training.
- .11 \_\_\_ Company personnel demonstrates a knowledge of alternate communications methods. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

The company personnel must:

- Demonstrate awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Have the equipment and skill to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire when appropriate.
- Have full cognizance of communications security importance.

---

TASK: 10B.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship-to-shore and/or operate on land

ENCLOSURE (1)

during all periods of visibility. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV company assets.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV company commander ensures liaison with the supported unit's S-4 immediately upon receipt of the mission.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ The AAV company commander, or his representative, identifies AAV Combat Service Support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 or parent unit during the planning phase.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Coordinates prescribed loads established by the supported unit.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ The AAV company commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are established.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander determines availability of AAV company logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported unit or parent unit, as required. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ The company staff ensures emergency resupply procedures are established.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander determines which CSS reports are required and submits them as designated.
- .8 \_\_\_\_\_ Liaison is established with the MAGTF CSS element, or parent command, as required for higher level logistic support requirements not within the capability of the supported unit.
- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ The company staff establishes a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and the procedures to request them through the appropriate supporting unit.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator examines the company performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedures for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for third echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedure for replacement of major end items.
- Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements:

Support requirements include:

- Equipment density list with all assets submitted.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- AAV unit logistics availability to include equipment status, PEB Class 9 parts, and expendable materials on hand. Additional consideration should be given to Equipment Repair Order (ERO)/ERO Shopping List (EROSLs), publications, calibration, and preventive maintenance schedules.

---

TASK: 10B.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV company's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company submits reports per the supported unit's SOP/OpOrd. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ The type report, format, and submission requirements are understood by company staff.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV unit SOP details any additional reports required to the parent organization.
- .4 \_\_\_ All required reports are submitted on time and are complete.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the unit, and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required" basis.
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in direct support of a ground unit assigned the mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The AAV company has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the commander's guidance.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ The company staff performs an analysis of the supported unit mission. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander or his representative requests intelligence information, serial photography, and any special topographic products from the S-2.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ The AAV commander, or representative, conducts an analysis of the landing beaches to include: hydrography, prevailing surf conditions, tides and currents, trafficability of the beach, exits, and the number, type and strength of enemy beach defensive installations.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander, as a special staff officer, conducts Interoperability Planning System to include detailed analysis of threat, terrain, and surf utilizing all available intel sources.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander prepares an AAV estimate of supportability.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents.
- .8 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander makes recommendations on AAV utilization during the ship-to-shore movements to include formations, tactics and techniques, timing of AAV waves, mine clearance, and transit plan of AAVs through cleared lanes.
- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander coordinates AAV participation during the conduct of rehearsals.
- .10 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander coordinates the details of organization and embarkation of AAVs to various classes of shipping.
- .11 \_\_\_\_\_ All aspects of AAV employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved.
- .12 \_\_\_\_\_ Company staff determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment, phasing ashore of spare parts, and estimates of breakdown rates.
- .13 \_\_\_\_\_ The company staff determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore, and coordinates them with the supported unit S-4 and parent command.
- .14 \_\_\_\_\_ The company coordinates for the employment of signals, marking devices, Global Positioning System, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. GAIL lights, chemical lights).

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .15 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander ensures enforcement of safety requirements for embarking in AAVs and recommends safety training programs for the unit to be embarked.
- .16 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander plans for the assignment of AAV company liaison personnel to the CSSE, as required.
- .17 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander plans with subordinate personnel for rehearsal of infantry embarking aboard AAVs while on ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION ANALYSIS

Ensure that the AAV company commander's analysis of the mission includes:

- The effect of hydrography/terrain on the employment of AAV support.
- AAV company ability to facilitate accomplishment of assigned mission.
- The need for any special support.

---

TASK: 10B.02.02 PREPARES FOR EMBARKATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV representatives attend planning conferences, as directed. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander advises supported commander on shipping requirements and recommends methods of embarkation.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander/staff completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander ensures the proper loading of AAVs in the correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCES

Ensures that planning conferences include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.

---

TASK: 10B.02.03 EMBARK AAVS

CONDITION(S): Planning conferences have been completed, and the AAV company is embarking ATF shipping with infantry personnel on board the AAVs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV company commander ensures surf report has been submitted per AAV unit SOP.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company commander ensures all safety procedures are briefed and adhered to.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company commander ensures that positive communication with the Privacy Control Ship (PCS) is established.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company staff ensures that prewater operation checklists are submitted prior to splashing.
- .5 \_\_\_ Company commander ensures rescue vehicles are designated. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Positive control and communication is maintained by the AAV commander or designated personnel.
- .7 \_\_\_ Company staff ensures loading is completed as coordinated with the ATF representatives at the planning conference.
- .8 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs ensure AAVs are tied down with appropriate devices on board ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESCUER VEHICLES

Ensure that while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles and that there is an AAV designated as the primary recycle vehicle.

---

TASK: 10B.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION

CONDITION(S): Embarked aboard ATF shipping, AAV company has completed landing plan rehearsals, and the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated in its final form. The Command Amphibious Task Force (CATF) has imposed Emission Control (EMCON).

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV company commander conducts surf analysis based on latest surf report.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company conducts final preparation under EMCON.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV company commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of AAV launch. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV company personnel are briefed and prepared to conduct AAV launch.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV company commander ensures embarkation rehearsals and safety briefs with embarked infantry are conducted per the AAV SOP.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that AAV company commander discusses the following with the naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| - Type of launch                               | - Launch internal                           |
| - Weather, sea and tidal conditions            | - Launch sequence                           |
| - Prelaunch warm up time and sequence          | - Ballast conditions                        |
| - Time for undocking AAVs                      | - Hand and arm signals                      |
| - Assignment of boat teams to AAVs             | - Flag and flashing light signals           |
| - Time to load man AAVs                        | - Frequencies and call signs                |
| - Staging AAVs                                 | - Designation of wave guides and commanders |
| - Time to launch                               | - Naval Control Group command and control   |
| - Launch signals                               | - Recovery of disabled vehicles             |
| - Barriers                                     | - Transfer of personnel                     |
| - Radio checks per EMCON conditions            | - Signals for emergency lifting of NGF      |
| - Beach characteristics                        | - Stalled vehicle procedures in well deck   |
| - Boat lane location                           | - Magnetic compass                          |
| - Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship |                                             |
| - Simulates launches from multiple ships       |                                             |
| - Vent fans on prior to AAV starts             |                                             |

---

TASK: 10B.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION AND SHIP-TO-SHORE MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): AAV company has completed debarkation from naval ships and AAVs are proceeding toward the assigned beaches.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time schedule.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV company forms into waves per the landing plan. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV company maintains internal communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV company maintains internal communications per unit SOP.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ Proper interval between AAVs is maintained per AAV unit SOP.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ Line Of Departure is crossed per the landing plan.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted per AAV unit SOP.
- .8 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave utilizing the grid reference system or GPS.
- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ Smoke is utilized for screening, if required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .10 \_\_\_\_ If attached to the AAV company, the AAV company commander controls the sequence and employment of mine clearance systems.
- .11 \_\_\_\_ Company commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared lane.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

#### LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

#### ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the formation and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call. The AAV commander provides input to the Battalion Landing Team commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

#### LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat teams to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commanders on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

#### SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- Serial number.
- Title of unit.
- Approximate number of personnel in the serial.
- Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport.
- Ship on which the serial is embarked.
- Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

nonscheduled unit. Such remarks aid in rapid identification and location of the serial by control agencies.

#### LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship-to-shore movement of nonscheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The AAV unit commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement, where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

#### LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship-to-shore movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The unit commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

#### WAVE CONTROL

The AAV company commander/wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The AAV commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10B.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is ordered to report to the supported unit and move to an assembly area. The movement can be conducted under any light conditions. The company is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area and to be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV Company Commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to units to be supported; provides their tentative locations and numbers or troops, weapons, ammunition, and supplies to be loaded.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV Company Commander task organizes logistics element and coordinates resupply means.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company staff considers OPSEC measures during the planning of the movement.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc.
- .5 \_\_\_ Company commander plans route(s) of march that offers the most cover and concealment.
- .6 \_\_\_ Company staff develops, in coordination with the supported units Fire Support Center (FSC), a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets.
- .7 \_\_\_ The company dispatches a quartering party to the supported unit to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area.
- .8 \_\_\_ Control measures (check points, release points, etc.), to ensure an orderly move to the assembly area are designated.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned vehicles.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is attached in direct support of an infantry unit and is making final preparations for offensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company commander acknowledges receipt of order.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company commander issues warning order to all subordinate elements. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Company commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance from the commander.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 \_\_\_ Ensures movement order is received and understood by all subordinate units.  
(KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ AAV company commander advises supported unit on the route/axis of advance to include selection of control measures.
- .6 \_\_\_ Ensures subordinate unit leaders are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the commencement of startup procedures.
- .7 \_\_\_ Company staff utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting rehearsals.
- .8 \_\_\_ AAV commander conducts a detailed brief of AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV briefing, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery attacks, vehicle breakdown, etc., and in accordance with AAV and supported unit's SOPs.
- .9 \_\_\_ AAV staff ensures all company personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.
- .10 \_\_\_ Route from present location to Start Point/Line of Departure (SP/LOD) is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to comply with start time.
- .11 \_\_\_ Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits.
- .12 \_\_\_ Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability.
- .13 \_\_\_ COMSEC material is issued as appropriate.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WARNING ORDER

Ensure the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.
- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operations.
- Anticipated time of movement.
- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Rate of march reference time and distance, if applicable.
- Rate of march reference catch-up speed and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.
- Recovery procedures for disabled vehicle.

#### COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations include at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

#### OPERATION ORDER

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Clearly stated mission.
- Commander's intent.
- Maneuvered and available fire support.
- Force of main effort.
- Definition of all control measures to be used: checkpoints, phase lines, etc.
- Identification of each specific objective to be seized.
- Any limiting instructions to temper engagements with enemy forces.
- Technique of movement to be used to include designation of leading, trailing, and overwatch elements.
- All available information on the enemy threat with emphasis on ATGMs, mines, obstacles, and other weapons which could affect the accomplishment of the mission.
- Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
- Communication/Signals to be used.
- Actions at the objective.
- Be prepared on order mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions, i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

---

TASK: 10B.03.03 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

CONDITION(S): The infantry is task organized with an AAV company to support offensive operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability as well. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the AAV company commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedures to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company maintains air/ground security at all times.
- .2 \_\_\_ The company commander maintains positive communication with lead, flank, and rear security elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes.
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV commander recommends movement techniques that make the best use of the terrain. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if appropriate.
- .6 \_\_\_ When moving, the company arrives and departs checkpoints within the time frames specified in the order.
- .7 \_\_\_ Arrival at established control measures is reported to parent headquarters, if not attached.
- .8 \_\_\_ AAV crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces.
- .9 \_\_\_ AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit.
- .10 \_\_\_ Appropriate techniques of movement are used when crossing danger areas. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: A movement technique is recommended based on METT-TSL.

---

TASK: 10B.03.04 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT

CONDITION(S): The AAV Company is required to hold while conducting a tactical movement.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company halts in a formation appropriate to the terrain, time available, and enemy situation, with infantry dismounted to secure the area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 \_\_\_ The company commander ensures unit security immediately to include air watches.
- .3 \_\_\_ At halt, vehicle halt checks are conducted per the unit SOP based on time available.
- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicles are prepared to move out on order and in the prescribed order of march.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.03.06 PLAN AN IN-STRIDE BREACH

CONDITION(S): The AAV company with platoon is in support of a GCE unit of battalion size. The GCE encounters a minefield which extends 200 meters in length and 50 meters in width and is in the axis of advance and cannot be bypassed. Intelligence reports verify the presence of antipersonnel and antitank mines. MCM MK154 vehicles are loaded with MK22 Mod 3/4 rocket motors and M59 line charges. The tactical situation requires that the minefield be breached immediately. Organized enemy defenses of the minefield are limited to a platoon size unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV commander issues a FRAG on how the breach will be conducted.
- .2 \_\_\_ Coordinates obscuring and screening smoke with GCE commander and/or FSC.
- .3 \_\_\_ Coordinates with combat engineers a method of marking cleared lane(s), and the GCE sequence of movement through the cleared/marked lane(s) per SOP.
- .4 \_\_\_ Coordinates MCM actions after the breach is accomplished.
- .5 \_\_\_ The order is issued to all MK154 team leaders and other key personnel.
- .6 \_\_\_ The AAV company commander ensures all personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their responsibilities.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.03.07 CONDUCT BREACHING OF A MINEFIELD

CONDITION(S): The AAV company with MCM platoon attached is tasked with conducting a breach through an enemy minefield and the AAV company commander is designated as a Breach Force Commander. Planning for the breach has been accomplished. The MCM vehicle(s) are in hasty positions. The support force has security elements forward in support by fire positions. Fire superiority has been achieved and obscuring/screening smoke has commenced.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Engineer reconnaissance team has called in a minefield report and the breach force commander has passed it to the GCE commander.
- .2 \_\_\_ Breach force commander sets up breaching equipment per minefield report.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ The tank plow and MK151 are moved into position at breach site as marked by combat engineers.
- .4 \_\_\_ Support force effectively uses organic weapons to suppress the far side of the obstacle.
- .5 \_\_\_ Breach force demonstrates a well integrated and successful breach of the minefield that effectively suppresses the enemy, screens the breach site, and allows for a well aimed rocket launch and line charge detonation that provides the desired effects.
- .6 \_\_\_ The cleared lanes are marked so the assault force can find and move through the breach.
- .7 \_\_\_ The breach force commander has redundant capabilities if the first breach element is destroyed or the lane(s) become impassable.
- .8 \_\_\_ The breach force commander notifies the assault force commander when the lane(s), are cleared and marked and that the assault force can move through the breach.
- .9 \_\_\_ Once the assault force and the support force have moved through the breach site, the breach force consolidates on the side of the minefield.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.03.08 CONDUCT NIGHT OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company has been ordered to provide support to an adjacent unit. A cross country movement at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The adjacent unit is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, air and Electronic Warfare (EW) capabilities. The AAV company commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the absolute minimum, and use covered communications. Night vision devices are available to the company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company commander plans for the effective allocation and employment of night vision devices in order to minimize the number of restrictive control measures.
- .2 \_\_\_ The company coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify link up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and frequencies, and recognition signals.
- .3 \_\_\_ Route selection minimize AAV exposure to the enemy versus the selection of a route following prominent terrain features.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company staff determines the ambient light level.
- .5 \_\_\_ Company staff considers the effect of ambient light level on Night Vision Goggles (NVGs).
- .6 \_\_\_ AAV commander demonstrates the ability to maintain effective command and control over the formation during night operations.
- .7 \_\_\_ The AAV commander displays the ability to navigate.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .8 \_\_\_ Company staff has a developed plan for primary and alternate means of communications to ensure effective command and control.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company has plans for immediate actions that are easily coordinated and controlled.
- .10 \_\_\_ The company employs navigation aids, such as the GPS, chemical lights, etc., to aid in movement.
- .11 \_\_\_ The commander plans for an employs a quartering party.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.03.09 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in direct support of an infantry unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV company commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's OpOrd/FRAGO and ensures subordinate leaders understand plan.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV unit commander recommends what type of defense will be used, mobile or position, to the supported commander.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV company commander and key personnel conduct a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions.
- .4 \_\_\_ The AAV company moves to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, visibility, and terrain.
- .5 \_\_\_ AAV company commander ensures subordinate leaders are preparing positions in support of their supported infantry company's plan.
- .6 \_\_\_ AAV commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAV commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions with the supported unit.
- .8 \_\_\_ AAV crews prepare and occupy fighting positions.
- .9 \_\_\_ AAV crews prepare range cards.
- .10 \_\_\_ AAV crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around positions.
- .11 \_\_\_ AAV company lays communications wire, if time permits.
- .12 \_\_\_ AAV company coordinates with the supported unit, selects alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses movement from positions.
- .13 \_\_\_ AAV crewmen utilize night vision devices.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

AAV COMPANY COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The AAV company commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to the supported unit's headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.
- Camouflage techniques.
- Control of key terrain.
- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated Target Reference Points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and Armor Kill Zone (AKZs).
- Cover for likely fields of approach.
- Long range and flanking fires.
- Supplemental positions.
- Coordination with adjacent units.
- Plans for close and midrange fires.
- Plan for withdrawal.
- Designated priority of work.
- Assignment of target priorities.
- Construct/Coordinate emplacement of obstacle.

---

TASK: 10B.03.10 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is providing .50 cal, 40mm, and small arms fire support from defensive positions at night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander advises supported unit commander on employment of the AAVs organic firepower assets as per control measures. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV crewman demonstrate the proper use of a range card. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Company Commander advises supported unit commander on a Final Protective Fire (FPF), if required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Pyrotechnics are fired to provide ambient light to ensure the target is being hit if NVGs are not available or utilized. All AAV crews should be evaluated.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target Reference Points (TRPs).
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.
- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Deflection.
- Range.
- Elevation.

EFFECTS

Rounds have effect on target.

---

TASK: 10B.03.11 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is supporting embarked infantry personnel. Enemy forces have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ The AAV company executes smoke screen utilizing the smoke generating system and/or smoke grenade launcher.
- .2 \_\_\_\_ AAV crews execute the correct loading and firing of the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ AAV crews execute immediate action on the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher, if required. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Ensure grenade is properly seated.
  - - If properly seated, remove the grenade, place it in another tube and attempt to fire. If it still does not fire, then stow the round to turn in later to EOD personnel for disposal.
  - - If the grenade is not properly seated, then reset and attempt to fire. If grenade still does not fire, change tubes and follow procedures as described above.

---

TASK: 10B.03.12 SUPPORTS COMMAND AND CONTROL FROM ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN COMMAND VEHICLE, AAVC7A1

CONDITION(S): During the movement to contact and consolidation phase of an operation, the supported infantry unit is entirely embarked in AAVs. A command section is being utilized to control maneuver and maintain required communications for supported infantry.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Assigned C-7 sections know and utilize the AAVs capabilities and avoid vehicle limitations.
- .2 \_\_\_ C-7 sections conduct orientation training for supported unit personnel.
- .3 \_\_\_ Crews perform required checks on all internal radio equipment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator should understand that the supported unit is responsible for operator actions within the communications compartment of AAVC.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in direct support. An AAV has become a combat casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV crew and company maintenance personnel conduct battle damage assessment and perform repairs, if possible.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Company staff coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit, to include the location of, and movement to, the recovery site. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Disabled vehicle and/or equipment is successfully recovered/evacuated, or the parent/CSS is notified.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ If applicable, NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander requests replacement vehicle, if tactically required.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ AAV crew men or maintenance personnel use approved methods of destruction to prevent enemy use of the vehicle if the vehicle is beyond salvage or recovery.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Exercise Commander (TEC), inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery crew must:

- Coordinate with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
- Identify location and plan a route to vehicle/equipment.
- Locate vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
- Ensure security augmentation, if tactically required.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OF CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
- Select route that minimizes exposure.
- Enforce all safety regulations.
- Rig for evacuation.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

---

TASK: 10B.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is tasked to support tactical operations either afloat and/or on land. Initial planning and logistical planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported unit, parent command, and CSS. Final preparations for supportability have been complied.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company completes all 1st through 3rd echelon maintenance prior to deployment.
- .2 \_\_\_ Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the AAV company commander and staff, and the supported unit, parent unit, and CSS. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV vehicle crews are trained and knowledgeable in the proper care, use, operation, cleaning, preservation, and lubrication of the tracked vehicle.
- .4 \_\_\_ Trained unit maintenance personnel and/or maintenance contact teams are located will forward and readily available to the AAV company. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ The AAV company carries an operational block of repair parts to include PEB, preventative maintenance, expendable materials, and secondary repairable for all equipment organic to the unit while deployed.
- .6 \_\_\_ Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on a routine basis and a continuing service program exists.
- .7 \_\_\_ Recover, refueling, and resupply are conducted per SOPs and preoperation coordination.
- .8 \_\_\_ Company maintenance personnel are capable of conducting 1st through 3rd echelon maintenance/repairs in a forward area.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure operational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

Supply and maintenance responsibilities encompass Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) and repair, recovery, PEB, parts block expendable materials, maintenance administration, calibration, technical publications weapons, optics, etc.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MPS 10B.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10B.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

CONDITION(S): An AAV company is tasked to support tactical operations of a ground combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company discipline is demonstrated by individual members being in control of themselves and successfully completing their individual tasks that contribute to mission accomplishment.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily.
- .3 \_\_\_ Vehicles, generators, etc., are given regular preventative maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them.
- .4 \_\_\_ Marines employ their firepower using proper fire discipline.
- .5 \_\_\_ Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
- .6 \_\_\_ Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather and are not scattered about.
- .7 \_\_\_ Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to Radio Detection Finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade.
- .8 \_\_\_ The company cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline.
- .9 \_\_\_ The company cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline.
- .10 \_\_\_ Marines wear the prescribed uniform at all times.
- .11 \_\_\_ Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area, and inspection of the condition of feet and body sores.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If the company is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communication procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the company is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the company throughout the exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is supporting tactical operations. The operation of limited duration; however, the AAV company is supporting the ship-to-shore movement and land operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company staff includes preventative maintenance considerations during planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ Company personnel display a sense of urgency when conducting PMs.
- .3 \_\_\_ Preoperation, during operation and postoperation checks are conducted as per unit SOP and current first echelon Technical Manuals (TMs).
- .4 \_\_\_ Proper startup procedures are followed.
- .5 \_\_\_ During halts, scheduled and unscheduled, checks are performed, per the TMs. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down.
- .7 \_\_\_ Additional equipment, including weapons and communication gear, receives continuous maintenance by crewmen.
- .8 \_\_\_ Safety precautions, as contained in the TMs and SOPs, are followed.
- .9 \_\_\_ AAVs do not become maintenance casualties due to a lack of preventative maintenance.
- .10 \_\_\_ Company maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with AAV subordinate units to identify corrective maintenance needs.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

HALT CHECKS

Halt checks are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the unit makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks.

---

TASK: 10B.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is tasked to provide direct support for tactical operations to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company vehicles and personnel maintain dispersion during movement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the conclusion of an attack or defensive action.
- .2 \_\_\_ Vehicles maintain assigned positions and intervals during maneuvering.
- .3 \_\_\_ Vehicle dispersion is maintained during halts, in assembly areas, and when deployed in the defense.
- .4 \_\_\_ Individual dispersion is maintained in assembly areas or when deployed in the defense.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .5 \_\_\_ Material dispersion is maintained to reduce its' vulnerability to incoming munitions.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Utilize METT-TSL when evaluating these standards.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is tasked to provide direct support of a ground element involved in both offensive and defensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Individual Marines demonstrate attention to detail when camouflaging company vehicles and equipment to include protection against overhead observation.
- .2 \_\_\_ During short halts, crews take advantage of natural cover and concealment.
- .3 \_\_\_ When halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged and reflective surfaces are dulled.
- .4 \_\_\_ Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or are concealed with natural material.
- .5 \_\_\_ The company staff stresses placement of men and material in areas that provide cover and concealment from casual detection by the enemy. Use of shadow areas for hasty concealment is stressed.
- .6 \_\_\_ Covered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of fire. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Crewmembers are able to generate vehicle smoke for screening if required by the supporting unit commander.
- .8 \_\_\_ During refueling operations, sites are selected and prepared, if required, with camouflage and cover.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator observes individual Marines and the organization. This task is applicable throughout the operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

COVERED POSITION

Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements:

- Position allows on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas.
  - Vehicle's hull is protected from direct from the front and protected from indirect fire by preparing positions when possible. Company will utilize engineer assets to prepare positions when possible.
- 

TASK: 10B.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is moving and is engaged by enemy infantry, combat vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV company returns suppressive fire immediately, if in range.
- .2 \_\_\_ Smoke is employed to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriated.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company AAVs take appropriate evasive action to utilize available terrain features/dispersion.
- .4 \_\_\_ The company employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy.
- .5 \_\_\_ AAV unit leader immediately requests fire support from mortars, artillery, NSFS, and/or aircraft, if available.
- .6 \_\_\_ SPOT reports are promptly submitted to the supported unit headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or mortar, is required.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE

CONDITION(S): The AAV Company is moving and comes under indirect fire from an unknown source.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Vehicle button up.
- .2 \_\_\_ Smoke is employed to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV commander ensures dispersion and uses immediate action to maximize use of available covering terrain.
- .4 \_\_\_ When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 Report, if appropriate.
- .5 \_\_\_ The company moves through, or bypasses, the impact area and continues the mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ The company submits spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator specifies type of weapon simulated, number of rounds, and type of ammunition used by simulated enemy firing unit. The evaluator will provide direction of fire if crater analysis is performed.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.07 ESTABLISHES TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in direct support of tactical operations. The operations order requires the company to operate covered circuits.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Crews correctly operate crypto equipment, if required.
- .2 \_\_\_ Operators correctly use data transfer device for Frequency Hopping (FH) data/crypto fill.
- .3 \_\_\_ Radio operators correctly use authentication tables, if required.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company personnel correctly use the "gingerbread" procedures.
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit leaders are able to explain the capabilities and limitations of the communications system in both the AAVP and the AAVC to supported personnel.
- .6 \_\_\_ Operators implement radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum.
- .7 \_\_\_ Crewmen utilize low power radio settings for short distance communications.
- .8 \_\_\_ Inoperable communications equipment is reported in a timely manner.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company staff and crew chiefs demonstrate the ability to pass information by alternate means.
- .10 \_\_\_ Personnel demonstrate the ability to employ all types of organic antennas and field expedient antennas.
- .11 \_\_\_ Company personnel demonstrate the ability to load Comsec/FH data and single channel frequency.
- .12 \_\_\_ Company personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late net entry.
- .13 \_\_\_ Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer Communication-Electronics Operating Instruction (CEOI) information from Automated Net Control Device (ANCD) to ANCD (from supported unit to company's ANCDs).
- .14 \_\_\_ Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer Comsec/FH data/sync time from ANCD to ANCD.
- .15 \_\_\_ Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot Start Net opening.
- .16 \_\_\_ Communication personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from Precise Location Global positioning Receiving system (PLGR) to ANCD.
- .17 \_\_\_ Company personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to Radio Transmitters (RTs).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: It must be ascertained if interoperability is available with higher and adjacent units.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW)

CONDITION(S): Enemy forces have Electronic Warfare Support Measures (ESM) and Electronic Warfare countermeasures (ECM) capability throughout the radio spectrum. Initiative deception and frequency jamming are being used. Numerous items of friendly

ENCLOSURE (1)

communications equipment are known to be in enemy hands, and they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. Enemy antennas are located well forward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan are operated in the covered mode.
- .2 \_\_\_ CEO is followed; daily frequency changes and call sign changes are used.
- .3 \_\_\_ Operators adhere to Emission Control (EMCON) procedures.
- .4 \_\_\_ Unit commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication intercept, if applicable.
- .5 \_\_\_ Authentication is required by Marine guarding uncovered radio nets.
- .6 \_\_\_ Radio operators do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts, and continue to attempt to communicate.
- .7 \_\_\_ Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is promptly reported to the supported unit by a "MIJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means.
- .8 \_\_\_ Personnel communicate by alternate means when radio nets are effectively jammed.
- .9 \_\_\_ Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BREADWINDOW" security violations.
- .10 \_\_\_ Expedient radio antennas are employed when feasible.
- .11 \_\_\_ Low priority/routine messages are sent by means other than radio.
- .12 \_\_\_ Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to communicate.
- .13 \_\_\_ Brevity codes promulgated by the OpOrd or SOP are employed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT

CONDITION(S): The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability. Their all weather capability is limited. Laser guided munitions are available to the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV company has established procedures for both active and passive air defense.
- .2 \_\_\_ Air guards are designated. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ The company has an alarm system to warn of air attack.
- .4 \_\_\_ Crewman within the company recognize the air attack alarm and immediately react to it.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ Embarked infantry are sector air watches, and use established procedures to alert personnel on board the AAV to air attack.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ Effective placement of LAAD assets within the formation, and procedures for the timely flow of early warning information to them are established in coordination with the supported unit.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ Maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage attacking aircraft.
- .8 \_\_\_\_\_ If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the company takes appropriate passive measures. (KI)
- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ If the company is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft the unit takes appropriate active defensive actions. (KI)
- .10 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at air targets.
- .11 \_\_\_\_\_ The company reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by flash message.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the Tactical Evaluation Controller, ensure that enemy air activity corresponds to contemporary threat air tactics, and that threat aircraft type is announced to the evaluated company.

KEY INDICATORS:

AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving companies increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet, fixed-wing prop, or rotary wing.
- State the signal established as the alarm for attack.
- Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

If adequate advance warning alerts the AAV unit to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
- Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

Once the AAV unit has taken up a passive anti-air posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the AAV unit should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the AAV unit, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

ENCLOSURE (1)

- AAV unit's air defense elements (AV (AD) and/or LAAD (if available) engage the aircraft.
- On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft, i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.
- Employ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

---

TASK: 10B.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is moving in a rear area without embarked troops onboard, and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to emplace a mine. The soldiers are captured with both the explosive device and documents.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company has and uses SOP for processing EPWs.
- .2 \_\_\_ The Marines handling EPWs segregate them by type: officer, NCOs, unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc.
- .3 \_\_\_ EPWs are searched immediately after capture; material found is tagged and kept with EPW.
- .4 \_\_\_ EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
- .5 \_\_\_ EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from hazards of enemy fire.
- .7 \_\_\_ Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means.
- .8 \_\_\_ When handling wounded or sick EPWs, the company ensures they receive proper medical care.
- .9 \_\_\_ EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas mask, etc.).
- .10 \_\_\_ EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents, are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

SEARCHING

EPWs should be disarmed and searched for concealed weapons, equipment, and documents of particular intelligence value immediately upon capture. The number of EPWs captured, enemy action, or other circumstances can make an immediate search impractical. Until each POW is searched, the responsible troops must be particularly alert to prevent the use of concealed weapons or destruction of documents or equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

EQUIPMENT

Items of personal or individual equipment which are new or appear to be of a type not previously seen may be of intelligence value and should be processed via intelligence channels. Types of equipment or supplies which may be individually carried or worn include, but are not limited to all types of weapons, ammunition, personal equipment (protective masks, first aid kits, etc.), clothing and rations.

DOCUMENTS

A captured document is any piece of recorded information which has been in the hands of the enemy. When such documents are taken from a EPW for safekeeping and delivery to intelligence personnel, care must be taken to assure that they can later be identified with the individual EPW from whom it was taken. Documents and records of a personal nature must be returned to the EPW from whom it was taken. In no instance should the personal identify card of a EPW be taken.

PERSONAL EFFECTS

EPWs should be permitted to retain protective equipment such as helmets, protective masks, and like items; effects and articles used for clothing or eating, except knives and forks; identification cards or tags; and badges of grade and nationality. When items of equipment issued for personal protection are taken, they must be replaced with equivalent items serving the same purpose. Although money and other valuables may be taken from EPWs as a security measure, they must be receipted for and a record maintained.

SEGREGATION

The segregation of EPWs requires that individual EPWs be identified as belonging to a particular category. While time and combat conditions may not permit the detailed interrogation of EPWs to make all such determinations, it should be possible to readily identify and separate EPWs according to status (officers/enlisted) and sex.

MEDICAL CARE

EPWs are entitled to the same medical care as friendly casualties, to include MEDEVAC priority. Any differences in treatment must be based solely on medical considerations.

---

TASK: 10B.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in support and has been tasked with outfitting an AAV to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1  The AAV company develops a plan for medical evacuation and has briefed the supported unit.
- .2  The AAV company understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC procedures, priorities, and required reports.
- .3  AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable.
- .4  Company Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen use correct first aid skills in the treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 \_\_\_ Company Marines tagged as lightly wounded apply self aid.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes for evacuation. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance.
- .8 \_\_\_ Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of command.
- .9 \_\_\_ Wounded Marines' equipment is safeguarded.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable in all evaluations, and should be simulated by evaluator or TECG input to ensure knowledge.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHAIN OF EVACUATION

AAV crewman should be aware of all possible means to MEDEVAC personnel. Location of aid stations should be noted in operations orders. Each AAV platoon should have a corpsman assigned to assist in medical treatment and evacuation.

---

TASK: 10B.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is in support of tactical operations both from the sea and on land. They have the ability to operate in limited light conditions.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company conducts a safety brief for embarked personnel prior to water operations.
- .2 \_\_\_ All embarked personnel wear helmets. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ All personnel wear inflatable preservers during water operations.
- .4 \_\_\_ Safety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne.
- .5 \_\_\_ Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment loose enough to jettison without delay.
- .6 \_\_\_ All embarked personnel have an individual vision light attached to the life preserver during night operations.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel are restricted from finding on top of a moving AAV.
- .8 \_\_\_ Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch.
- .9 \_\_\_ No smoking is allowed.
- .10 \_\_\_ AAVs maintain a distance of at least 30 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne.
- .11 \_\_\_ AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to ensure the door is secure during all waterborne operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

.12 \_\_\_\_ All personnel are kept clear of the HG radio antenna on the AAVC.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

HELMETS

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet.

LIFE PRESERVERS

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewman and embarked personnel. Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck while vehicles are waterborne, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10B.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10B.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV company.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV company develops a plan for outlining procedures for enemy NBC strikes and reports required.
- .2 \_\_\_ All individuals in the company have the NBC defense equipment authorized by the unit Table of Equipment (T/E).
- .3 \_\_\_ All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to designated and trained operators.
- .4 \_\_\_ NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacements ordered.
- .5 \_\_\_ Decontamination equipment (mops, brooms, shovels, rags, etc.) and bulk decontaminates are assembled and ready for transport to a decontamination area.
- .6 \_\_\_ M11 decontamination equipment is requested and units are filled (water used for training).
- .7 \_\_\_ NBC trained personnel are available on a 24-hour a day basis.
- .8 \_\_\_ MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV company personnel are at or above that level.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company decon teams are able to utilize the appropriate radiac detection units and report the readings to higher headquarters.
- .10 \_\_\_ Company staff thoroughly understand MOPP levels for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards.
- .11 \_\_\_ All company personnel can identify NATO or threat NBC contamination markers.
- .12 \_\_\_ Company dispersion utilizes terrain features for cover; concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the company with information to expect an imminent nuclear attack by the enemy, and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is informed that nuclear weapons have been used in the theater of operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Backup command, control, and communication procedures are implemented.
- .2 \_\_\_ Subordinate/Displaced elements of the company are alerted.
- .3 \_\_\_ The company continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage.
- .4 \_\_\_ The company implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two layered uniform.
- .6 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting positions, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or as a last resort lie prone on the ground, face down and feet to the suspected blast.
- .7 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE).
- .8 \_\_\_ Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the AN/VDR-2 radiac set.
- .9 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from heat, blast, and radiation.
- .11 \_\_\_ Company Marines are familiar with standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT

When a unit has been informed that a nuclear blast is imminent, the following precautionary measures should be taken:

- On the C-7, only utilize the crew radios to save the MIQ and MSQ-115.

---

TASK: 10B.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Nuclear attack is simulated by the detonation of an artillery or nuclear blast simulator or by other appropriate means.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission if possible.
- .3 \_\_\_ NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for

ENCLOSURE (1)

collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure means when possible.

- .4 \_\_\_ Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits.
- .5 \_\_\_ Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP.
- .6 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the AN/VDR-2 radiac set.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator will assess constructive casualties due to blast, heat, radiation, and Electromagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.06.04 RESPOND TO THE RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred. The AAV company location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The unit gets effective downwind message at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the company about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared is prepared by the company itself. An NBC-3 report is furnished about 45 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about 4 hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company's primary mission is performed concurrently with all NBC actions.
- .2 \_\_\_ The company is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival, and subordinate units are notified.
- .3 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is maintained using the IM-174 detector or an AN/VDR-2 radiac set.
- .4 \_\_\_ Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from fallout.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout effects. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means.
- .7 \_\_\_ The company's total dose information is measured, if possible, using the IM-143 or AN/PDR-75 and reported to the supported command element using available secure means.
- .8 \_\_\_ Exposure is minimized while the command element determines if relocation to a clean area is necessary.
- .9 \_\_\_ Personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment.
- .10 \_\_\_ Casualties and fatalities are assessed.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

.11 \_\_\_ Vehicles are assessed for damage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

---

TASK: 10B.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are contaminated. The hazard to personnel does not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company CO establishes decontamination priorities.
- .2 \_\_\_ A hasty decontamination point is established out of the contaminated area.
- .3 \_\_\_ Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is tactical.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Equipment and vehicles are decontaminated using appropriate expedient devices. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Contaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the AN/VDR-2.
- .8 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to higher headquarters.
- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel are decontaminated, as necessary.
- .10 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .11 \_\_\_ Total dose information for the operational decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the AN/VDR-2 to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. If the contaminate is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

---

TASK: 10B.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation forces the AAV company to cross a radiologically contaminated area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback dose rate.
- .2 \_\_\_ The reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area.
- .3 \_\_\_ The company crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
- .4 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .5 \_\_\_ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the AN/PDR-27.
- .6 \_\_\_ Decontamination priorities are established and performed, as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ The company's total dose information is recorded, using available IM-143s or AN/PDR-75s, and reported to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the AAV company with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The company receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM 21-40, pages 6-24 and 6-15. The AAV company is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3 miles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt.
- .2 \_\_\_ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc., is available to the unit.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of its vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted fallout zone).
- .4 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of the measure needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ The company implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_ Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two-layered uniform.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground.
- .8 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .9 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from EMP and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE). (KI)
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters.
- .11 \_\_\_ Company commander acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All subordinate/detached elements have been warned and protective measures implemented.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery or nuclear blast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELECTRONIC EQUIPMENT

When an AAV company has been informed that a nuclear blast is imminent, the following precautionary measure should be taken:

- On the C-7, only utilize the crew's radio to save the MIQs and MIQ-115.

---

TASK: 10B.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The AAV company is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The company has a plan which addresses chemical defense/decontamination procedures.
- .2 \_\_\_ All company elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and supported commander's guidance.
- .3 \_\_\_ Mission-essential tasks that require a high degree of manual dexterity or physical strength, and are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional personnel, are planned.
- .4 \_\_\_ Company personnel achieved designated MOPP level within the allotted time.
- .5 \_\_\_ The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination.
- .6 \_\_\_ The company continues the primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize casualties and damage.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .7 \_\_\_ Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter halves, or ponchos.
- .8 \_\_\_ Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc.
- .9 \_\_\_ Company personnel have complete, M258A1, and M291 kits.
- .10 \_\_\_ The company determines and reports potential decontamination sites to higher headquarters.
- .11 \_\_\_ Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored.
- .12 \_\_\_ Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability.
- .13 \_\_\_ Company personnel demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms.
- .14 \_\_\_ Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that attack is imminent.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10B.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The AAV company in support is subjected to a chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon hearing a chemical alarm, personnel take immediate protective measures followed by treatment/decontamination of casualties.
- .2 \_\_\_ Personnel automatically mask upon notification of any enemy artillery, rocket, or air attack/overlight or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source.
- .3 \_\_\_ Company personnel do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander.
- .4 \_\_\_ The AAV company is able to perform it's mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4.
- .5 \_\_\_ The type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit.
- .6 \_\_\_ Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element.
- .8 \_\_\_ The supported commander determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible, consistent with the mission.
- .9 \_\_\_ The supported commander/company commander determines priorities for decontamination.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .10 \_\_\_\_ WIAs are decontaminated, wrapped and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted.
- .11 \_\_\_\_ KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is alerted.
- .12 \_\_\_\_ Unmasking procedures is followed when directed by command.
- .13 \_\_\_\_ WIEs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as mission permits.
- .14 \_\_\_\_ KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits.
- .15 \_\_\_\_ Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation.
- .16 \_\_\_\_ Expended chemical defense items are replaced, as required.
- .17 \_\_\_\_ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.
- .18 \_\_\_\_ Company personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties." Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available:
  - a. Use the detector at different points in the perimeter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
  - b. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for five minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is

ENCLOSURE (1)

to be done in the shade. Weapons are removed from individuals prior to unmasking.

c. If no symptoms appear, unmasking unit will accomplish this by 1/3 on the unit intervals. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:

a. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.

b. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for the next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.

c. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks. Weapons are removed from the individuals prior to unmasking.

d. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marine unmask for five minutes, and then remask.

e. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

---

TASK: 10B.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Company personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Company personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits.
- .2 \_\_\_ Extent of decontamination is determined and the company commander establishes decontamination priorities.
- .3 \_\_\_ Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or discarded.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Company personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.
- .6 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate:
  - a. Procedures are repeated.
  - b. Decontamination support is requested.
  - c. Risk of using equipment is accepted.
- .7 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to supported headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

.8 \_\_\_\_\_ OIC reduces MOPP level, if required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

1. Initial decontamination of company equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
  - a. Removing all gross liquid contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
  - b. Utilizing M11 decontamination apparatuses filled with DS2 to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment).
2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
  - a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
  - b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaks with DS2 (water is used for training purpose).
  - c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.
3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.
4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.
  - a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require an M12A1 decontamination apparatus be requested from the supported headquarters.
  - b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within six hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once unmasking procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

---

TASK: 10B.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): The AAV company's equipment has been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ The company commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to his time of arrival at the Decon site and the supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished by the contaminated company. The estimated time of completion is also established.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ Company commander request and receives route clearance to Personnel Decontamination Station/Equipment Decontamination Station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. Advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is dispatched to PDS/EDS.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Main body arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for processing.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Decontamination begins as scheduled.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The company reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ CO/OIC adjusts MOPP level, as required.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

SECTION 10C  
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

INDEX OF TASKS

	PAGE
<u>MPS 10C.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10C.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING .....	10-C-1
2) TASK 10C.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT .....	10-C-2
3) TASK 10C.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION .....	10-C-2
4) TASK 10C.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING .....	10-C-3
5) TASK 10C.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING .....	10-C-4
6) TASK 10C.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING .....	10-C-5
<u>MPS 10C.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10C.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING .....	10-C-7
2) TASK 10C.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION .....	10-C-8
3) TASK 10C.02.03 EMBARK AAV .....	10-C-8
4) TASK 10C.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION .....	10-C-9
5) TASK 10C.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION .....	10-C-10
6) TASK 10C.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT .....	10-C-11
7) TASK 10C.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV .....	10-C-13
8) TASK 10C.02.08 RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV .....	10-C-13
<u>MPS 10C.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE</u>	
1) TASK 10C.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-C-15
2) TASK 10C.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-C-15
3) TASK 10C.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES .....	10-C-18
4) TASK 10C.03.04 RELIEF IN PLACE .....	10-C-19
5) TASK 10C.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD .....	10-C-19
6) TASK 10C.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES .....	10-C-20
7) TASK 10C.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING .....	10-C-21
8) TASK 10C.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH .....	10-C-21
9) TASK 10C.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH .....	10-C-22
10) TASK 10C.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT .....	10-C-23
11) TASK 10C.03.11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT .....	10-C-23

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- 12) TASK 10C.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS ..... 10-C-24
- 13) TASK 10C.03.13 CONDUCT AN ASSAULT ..... 10-C-25
- 14) TASK 10C.03.14 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS ..... 10-C-26
- 15) TASK 10C.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE ..... 10-C-27
- 16) TASK 10C.03.16 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN ..... 10-C-28

MPS 10C.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

- 1) TASK 10C.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS ..... 10-C-30
- 2) TASK 10C.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS ..... 10-C-31

MPS 10C.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

- 1) TASK 10C.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE ..... 10-C-32
- 2) TASK 10C.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) ..... 10-C-32
- 3) TASK 10C.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION ..... 10-C-33
- 4) TASK 10C.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT ..... 10-C-34
- 5) TASK 10C.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES ..... 10-C-34
- 6) TASK 10C.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE ..... 10-C-35
- 7) TASK 10C.05.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION ..... 10-C-35
- 8) TASK 10C.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) ..... 10-C-36
- 9) TASK 10C.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT ..... 10-C-37
- 10) TASK 10C.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR ..... 10-C-38
- 11) TASK 10C.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS ..... 10-C-39
- 12) TASK 10C.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS ..... 10-C-40

MPS 10C.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

- 1) TASK 10C.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS ..... 10-C-42
- 2) TASK 10C.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK ..... 10-C-42
- 3) TASK 10C.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK .... 10-C-43
- 4) TASK 10C.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST ..... 10-C-44
- 5) TASK 10C.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-C-44
- 6) TASK 10C.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA ..... 10-C-45
- 7) TASK 10C.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE ..... 10-C-46
- 8) TASK 10C.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-C-47

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 9) TASK 10C.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-C-47
- 10) TASK 10C.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-C-50
- 11) TASK 10C.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT .. 10-C-51

MPS 10C.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon is given the mission to support tactical operations either as an attached unit or in direct support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon commander promptly reports to the supported commander for planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ Platoon commander conducts mission analysis.
- .3 \_\_\_ Platoon commander issues a warning order to section leaders.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon sergeant coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangement. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon commander develops an AAV estimate of supportability.
- .6 \_\_\_ Platoon commander participates in a leaders recon with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAVs are fully integrated into the supported unit's plan.
- .7 \_\_\_ Platoon commander recommends routes/axis of advance, determines time and distance of AAV movement, employment methods, and communication requirements to the supported unit. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ Incorporate Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. (KI)
- .9 \_\_\_ Platoon commander develops appropriate plans after receipt of the supported commander's decision.
- .10 \_\_\_ Platoon commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order.
- .11 \_\_\_ Platoon commander issues his five paragraph order.
- .12 \_\_\_ All changes in operational readiness of AAVs are promptly reported to the supported unit or parent command.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AAV platoon leaders as they fulfill their basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT

Ensure commander allocate 2/3 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

ENCLOSURE (1)

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, assess hazards, make risk decisions, implement controls, and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control, and logistics responsibility.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the use of METT-TSL.

---

TASK: 10C.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon commander adheres to all applicable SOPs.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon complies with the supported unit's operations order.
- .3 \_\_\_ Enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon commander provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements, concerning AAV utilization.
- .5 \_\_\_ Operational reports are submitted per the operations order in a timely and accurate manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator determines if the AAV unit adhered to the supported unit's operations SOP.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported company has intelligence data to be provided to the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon uses procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses interoperability with supported units.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests intelligence based on METT-TSL.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ All classified material is safeguarded and limited access appropriately allowed.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon commander stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon commander ensures intelligence information is disseminated to section elements.
- .6 \_\_\_ Platoon commanders know the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10C.5.10, PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS:

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of collection means available.
- Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.
- Emphasis on OPSEC at all levels.
- Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
- Exploitation of information gleaned from EPWs.

---

TASK: 10C.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon commander coordinates with supported unit's communications officer.
- .2 \_\_\_ All required communications nets are identified.
- .3 \_\_\_ It is ensured that an adequate number of frequencies, FH data and Net IDs are allocated.
- .4 \_\_\_ Plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity.
- .5 \_\_\_ Plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow for brevity.
- .6 \_\_\_ Platoon commander identifies any interoperability problems.
- .7 \_\_\_ Platoon commander maintains a copy of the supported unit's communications SOP.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander stresses communication security awareness for all personnel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reviews the communications plan of the supported unit concerning secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies that the AAV unit has assets available.
- .10 \_\_\_ Wire communications is stressed when in static or defensive positions.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon provides the supported unit's communications personnel with AAV-7A1 briefing/training.
- .12 \_\_\_ Communications reports are included in the reports control system.
- .13 \_\_\_ The platoon uses alternate communications methods as needed. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

Communications include:

- The platoon demonstrates awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- The platoon is prepared to erect expedient antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire, when appropriate.
- Displays cognizance of importance of communications security.

---

TASK: 10C.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land all periods of visibility. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV assets.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon commander conducts liaison with the supported company's staff immediately upon receipt of the mission.
- .2 \_\_\_ Platoon commander identifies AAV combat service support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 during the planning phase.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs comply with prescribed loads established by the embarkation plan.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates with his parent unit concerning any logistics requirements beyond the supported unit's capability. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are established.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines availability of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported or parent unit.
- .7 \_\_\_ Emergency resupply procedures are established.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander completes required CSS reports as designated in the reports controls system.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic support not within the capability of the supported or parent units.
- .10 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon sergeant has a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and to request them through the appropriate supporting or parent unit.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator examines the platoon's performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedure for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedure for replacement of major end items.

Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

---

TASK: 10C.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The supported unit's SOP and OpOrd Order contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV platoon's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander develops a system to comply with supported unit's operations SOP and OpOrd Order reports control procedures. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ The type of report, format, and submission requirements are understood.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander completes all reports required to the parent organization as scheduled.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Reports are submitted on time and are complete and accurate.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the platoon and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required basis".
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10C.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in direct support of a ground unit assigned the mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The AAV platoon is embarked on ATF shipping, and has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the commander's guidance.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander performs mission analysis. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander prepares an AAV estimate of supportability.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander makes recommendations on AAV utilization during the ship to objective movements to include formations, tactics and techniques.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates AAV participation during the conduct of rehearsals and briefs platoon on mission.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates the details of organization/embarkation of his AAVs.
- .8 \_\_\_ All aspects of AAV employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore, and coordinates them with the supported unit staff and parent command.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant plans for the employment of signals, marking devices, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. GAIL lights, chemical lights).
- .12 \_\_\_ The platoon commander lists safety requirement for embarking in AAVs and reviews the safety training programs for the unit to be embarked.
- .13 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with his section leaders and crew chiefs on plans for rehearsal of infantry embarking aboard AAVs while on ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION ANALYSIS

Ensure that the AAV platoon commander's analysis of the mission is per METT-T-SL.

- Ensure platoon commander develops plan for any special support.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Develops bump plan for any disabled AAV.

---

TASK: 10C.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV representatives attend planning conferences as directed. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner.
- .3 \_\_\_ Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant develops plans for loading of AAVs in the correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCES

Should include:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
- Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
- Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.
- Staffing and equipping ATF ships designated as AAV repair ships.

---

TASK: 10C.02.03 EMBARK AAV

CONDITION(S): Planning conferences have been completed, and the AAV platoon is embarking Amphibious Task Force (ATF) shipping with infantry personnel on board the AAVs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander/sergeant ensures surf report has been submitted per AAV parent unit SOP.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs ensure all embarked personnel are wearing a serviceable life jacket with inflation cartridges and that a proper safety brief is conducted.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures positive communication is established with the ships
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures a personnel manifest of all embarked Marines is submitted prior to splashing.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures prewater operation checklists are submitted by crew chiefs prior to splashing.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures that rescue vehicles are designated. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Loading is completed as previously coordinated with the ATF representatives at the planning conference.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures AAVs are gripped down with appropriate devices on board ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESCUE VEHICLES

Ensure that while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles, there is an AAV designated as the primary rescue vehicle.

---

TASK: 10C.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEBARKATION

CONDITION(S): While embarked aboard ATF shipping, the AAV platoon has completed landing plan rehearsals, and the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated in its final form. The CATF has imposed EMCON.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts surf analysis based on latest surf report.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts final preparation under EMCON.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander attends ship pre-launch conference.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of launch. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel are briefed on conduct of launch.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures ships ventilation fans are turned on before engines are started and warmed up.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAVs are marked with temporary chalk marks, etc., for ease of identification for embarked Marines.
- .8 \_\_\_ Crews have completed embarkation rehearsal and safety briefs are conducted with embarked infantry per the AAV unit SOP.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crews release, remove, and store the grippes in the proper area.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crews embark troops and equipment per published time schedule.
- .11 \_\_\_ Crews ensure all gear is properly stored and secured.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .12 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures that the platoon sergeant collects and submits signed and verified manifest roster and pre-water checklist to ship's 1st Lieutenant and ensures water tight integrity.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that the platoon commander discusses the following with naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| - Type of launch                               | - Launch interval                           |
| - Weather, sea and tidal conditions            | - Launch sequence                           |
| - Prelaunch warm up time and sequence          | - Ballast conditions                        |
| - Time for undogging AAVs                      | - Hand and arm signals                      |
| - Assignment of boat teams to AAVs             | - Flag and flashing light signals           |
| - Time to load man AAVs                        | - Frequencies and call signs                |
| - Staging AAVs                                 | - Designation of wave guides and commanders |
| - Time to launch                               | - Naval Control Group command and control   |
| - Launch signals                               | - Recovery of disabled vehicles             |
| - Barriers                                     | - Signals for emergency lifting of NGF      |
| - Radio checks per EMCON conditions            | - Stalled vehicle procedures in well deck   |
| - Beach characteristics                        | - Magnetic compass information              |
| - Boat lane location                           |                                             |
| - Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship |                                             |
| - Simulates launches from multiple ships       |                                             |

---

TASK: 10C.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION

CONDITION(S): Preparations for launch are being completed; AAVs are staged, troops and equipment are loaded.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ Crews make final preparation for launch on signal. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ AAVs move to the "ready line" in proper sequence.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ AAVs launch on the signal of well deck control officer.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ AAVs accelerate and maneuver to clear stern of ship.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time schedule.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

FINAL PREPARATION FOR LAUNCH

Preparations should include:

- Ensure leaders keep crews alert and advised of time remaining to launch.
- Ensure Navy well deck personnel are briefed and look for plenum indicators to be in "up" position before splash.
- Ensure AAVs move to ready line without ground guides.

---

TASK: 10C.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): AAV platoon has completed debarkation from naval ships and are proceeding toward the assigned beach.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAVs form in waves per the landing plan. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Platoon maintains internal communications.
- .4 \_\_\_ Proper interval between AAVs is maintained.
- .5 \_\_\_ The LOD is crossed per the landing plan.
- .6 \_\_\_ Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted, as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ Wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave.
- .8 \_\_\_ Wave commander controls supporting fire of the AAV unit.
- .9 \_\_\_ Smoke is utilized for screening, as required.
- .10 \_\_\_ Wave commander controls all changes to waterborne formations outside the surf zone.
- .11 \_\_\_ Wave commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared lane.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial

ENCLOSURE (1)

assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

#### ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the formation and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call. The AAV commander provides input to the BLT commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

#### LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat teams to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commander on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

#### SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- Serial number.
- Title of unit.
- Approximate number of personnel in the serial.
- Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport the serial.
- Ship on which the serial is embarked.
- Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or nonscheduled unit such remarks aid in rapid identification and location of the serial by control agencies.

#### LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship to objective movement of nonscheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The platoon commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement, where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

#### LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship to objective movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The platoon commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

ENCLOSURE (1)

WAVE CONTROL

The AAV wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The wave commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

---

TASK: 10C.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon participating in a ship to objective movement has one of its AAVs become disabled. A standby vehicle or boat is briefing moved into place to transfer the embarked personnel.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant designates a specific AAV as rescue vehicle during surf and waterborne operations.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs use appropriate day/night distress signals.
- .3 \_\_\_ Wave commander and platoon sergeant are notified by radio/appropriate signals, of the nature of the problem and the required assistance.
- .4 \_\_\_ Crew member(s) immediately notify embarked personnel of difficulties.
- .5 \_\_\_ Driver keeps master switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch to "water tracks", and advance throttle to 1800 RPMs if engine is operable.
- .6 \_\_\_ Driver attempts restart if engine is inoperable.
- .7 \_\_\_ Third crewman assists embarked personnel topside for transfer. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ Embarked troops are correctly and safely transferred from the disabled vehicle.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crew member closes the cargo hatch, after personnel are transferred, to prevent taken on water.
- .10 \_\_\_ Evacuation procedures are completed for the disabled vehicle.
- .11 \_\_\_ Crew members are knowledgeable of safety procedures to be used when an AAV is sinking or when it has sunk.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TRANSFER OF PERSONNEL

If personnel must enter the water, the crew will ensure that their life jackets are inflated once topside. If time permits they will enter the water two at a time and remain as "buddy teams". The rescue vehicle will position itself upstream from the disabled vehicle. A boathook is used to assist in retrieving passengers.

---

TASK: 10C.02.08 RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV

CONDITION(S): An AAV is disabled in the water with no embarked troops. The crew has notified the platoon sergeant.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The crew prepares the vehicle for towing.
- .2 \_\_\_ Rescue vehicle approaches vehicle on the leeward side.
- .3 \_\_\_ Tow lines are properly connected.
- .4 \_\_\_ All hatches on both vehicles are closed.
- .5 \_\_\_ Driver keeps master switch on, unlocks brakes, ensures transmission is in neutral, towed vehicle is towed to nearest safe haven.
- .6 \_\_\_ Tow lines are then disconnected and tow bar/cables are connected.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the unit SOP concerning towing procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

PREPARATION FOR TOWING

Driver keeps master switch "on" shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch in "water tracks", and advances hand throttle to 1800 RPMs, if operable. Disconnects Power Take Off (PTO) and Hydrostatic Steering Unit (HSU) as necessary.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10C.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10C.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon is ordered to move to an occupied assembly area, and to be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to the unit.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates resupply means.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander considers OPSEC measures during the planning of the movement.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc.
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon commander plans route(s) of march that offers the most cover and concealment.
- .6 \_\_\_ Platoon commander develops, in coordination with the supported units, FSC, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander, in conducting liaison with the supported unit, dispatches a quartering party to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander demonstrates knowledge of planning and time and distance when designating control measures (check points, release points, etc.) to ensure an orderly move to the assembly area.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned vehicles.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is attached in direct support of an infantry unit, and is making final preparations for offensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs conduct vehicle operational checks.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicles are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the commencement of startup procedures.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance from the commander.
- .6 \_\_\_ The route/axis of advance to include control measures is planned in detail.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery attacks.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting rehearsals, if time allows.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon movement order is issued to sections/subordinate elements.  
(KI)
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments.
- .11 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.
- .12 \_\_\_ AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement.
- .13 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles.
- .14 \_\_\_ Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to comply with start time.
- .15 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection.
- .16 \_\_\_ Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are corrected.
- .17 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon enemy contact. (KI)
- .18 \_\_\_ Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits.
- .19 \_\_\_ Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability.
- .20 \_\_\_ COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate.
- .21 \_\_\_ Vehicles are started simultaneously.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WARNING ORDER

Ensure that the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operation.
- Anticipated time of movement.
- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time to start engines.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.
- Rate of march, catch-up speed, and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.

COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations includes discussion of at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

OPERATION ORDER

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Orientation.
- Clearly stated mission and order of priorities.
- Situation.
- Commanders' intent.
- Scheme of maneuver and available fire support.
- Definition of all control measures to be used; checkpoints, phase lines, etc.
- Identification of each specific objective to be seized.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Any limiting instructions to temper engagement with enemy forces.
- Technique of movement to be used to include designation of leading, training, and overwatch positions to be occupied.
- Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
- Communication/Signals to be used.
- Actions at the objective.
- Focus of effort.
- Be prepared for follow-on order missions.
- Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions; i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

---

TASK: 10C.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The platoon is located in the assembly area with embarked infantry. They have been given the task to conduct a forward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning order to section/subordinate elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The route/axis of advance to include control measures are planned in detail. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander briefs and coordinates with the supported unit for needs of mechanized passage of lines and issues the platoon the order.
- .5 \_\_\_ Conduct movement to passage of lines as briefed.
- .6 \_\_\_ Co-locate unit CP with stationary unit's CP, as necessary.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Control measures should identify:

- Designation of unit to pass.
- The enemy situation.
- Friendly situation and positions.
- Time of passage.
- Coordinate passage points and lanes.
- Number and type of vehicles to pass.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Patrol routes and OP locations.
  - Obstacle types and locations of contaminated areas.
  - Fire support plans.
  - Vehicle locations and attack positions.
  - CS and CSS to be provided and location of assets.
- 

TASK: 10C.03.04 RELIEF IN PLACE

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is task organized to support offensive infantry operations. The enemy situation requires the relief in place of a friendly unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledge receipt of order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning orders to sections/subordinate elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes liaison with supported unit and receives commander intent.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts a platoon brief detailing actions required to complete relief in place. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Conduct relief in place.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION REQUIREMENTS

These should identify:

- Is the relief sequential or simultaneous?
  - Assign section positions and sectors of fire to include route to hide and fire positions.
  - Location of obstacles.
  - Fire plan sketches.
  - Apply all defensive techniques.
- 

TASK: 10C.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is supporting offensive operations. The enemy, in addition to having direct and indirect fire and air capability, has EW capability. The AAV platoon has received the supported unit's order which specified the SP/LOD location and crossing time.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's lead elements cross the SP/LOP on time.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crossing the SP/LOD is accomplished with minimal confusion and minimal radio communications.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs and supported unit crosses LOD in designated order of march.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon elements move out using designated movement techniques/formations. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit crosses release point on time.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT

The various techniques of movement are described in general in task 10C.3.6 and specifically as follows:

- Traveling (See task 10C.3.7)
- Traveling Overwatch (See task 10C.3.9)

If a particular movement technique is not specified in the movement order, the AAV platoon commander recommends a technique most appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.

---

TASK: 10C.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is task organized to support offensive infantry operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the AAV platoon commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedure to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon maintains security at all times.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains positive control over lead, flank, and rear security elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander recommends movement techniques that make the best use of the terrain.
- .5 \_\_\_ Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if appropriate.
- .6 \_\_\_ Control measures are reported.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon responds immediately to the supported unit commander, if required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .8 \_\_\_\_ Crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces.
- .9 \_\_\_\_ AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit.
- .10 \_\_\_\_ AAVs use appropriate techniques of movement when crossing danger area. (KI)
- .11 \_\_\_\_ Formations are constantly adjusted to compensate for the tactical situation and the terrain.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluators observe elements/entire unit during each move and apply the 90 percent rule.

KEY INDICATORS:

CROSSING DANGER AREAS

Upon reaching a danger area (e.g., wooded area, defile, bridge, urban area, obstacles to be cleared, etc.), the AAV unit establishes local vehicle security, establishes overwatch positions, and dismounts infantry to secure the danger area as necessary. AAV unit moves through danger area by echelon or as situation dictates. Coordination between the infantry and the supporting AAV unit is critical to the successful completion of the task.

---

TASK: 10C.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon moves by traveling when enemy contact is not likely and speed is essential.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ AAVs move in the ordered formation.
- .2 \_\_\_\_ Sections/Subordinate units move by traveling.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ All elements move at the maximum safe speed.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ Platoon formations use covered and concealed routes to maximum extent possible.
- .5 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander reports crossing control measures as specified.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Ninety percent rule applies.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon moves by traveling overwatch when contact with the enemy is possible.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ AAV platoon's lead element continues to move, acting as the base unit, maintaining the rate and direction of march. (KI)

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .2 \_\_\_\_ Trailing elements move at variable speeds frequently pausing to overwatch movement of the lead element.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ Trailing elements key their movement to terrain and overwatch positions so they can support the lead element if that element comes in contact.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator advises the platoon commander that he is entering the rear of the battle area and enemy contact is possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

LEAD ELEMENT MOVEMENT

The lead element's rate of movement must be governed by the ability of the trailing elements to arrive at and establish appropriate overwatch positions.

---

TASK: 10C.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon moves by bounding overwatch when contact with the enemy is expected/imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ Bounding overwatch techniques are utilized.
- .2 \_\_\_\_ Overwatch sections/elements occupy overwatch position(s) and searches adjacent terrain. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_\_ Overwatch positions offer good fields of fire to cover bounding AAV section/element.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ Bounding AAV section/element moves into terrain being searched by overwatch section(s) and takes up good overwatch positions.
- .5 \_\_\_\_ Bounding section occupies subsequent overwatch positions, searches adjacent terrain, and verifies that it is secure.
- .6 \_\_\_\_ Bounding section reports by either signal or radio that it is prepared to overwatch.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator may deploy aggressors against lead squads/elements; 90 percent rule applies.

KEY INDICATORS:

ACTION OF OVERWATCH SQUADS/ELEMENTS

Squads/elements must:

- Vehicles occupy suitable positions and prepare to fire.
  - Positions permit observation and fires upon the moving unit's axis and terrain which dominates that axis.
  - Overwatch squad(s)/element engages detected enemy with all available direct fire weapons (within effective range).
- 

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10C.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is required to halt while conducting a tactical movement.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ With infantry dismounted for area security, AAVs halt in a formation appropriate to the terrain, time available, and enemy situation.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes unit security immediately to include air watches.
- .3 \_\_\_ At halt, vehicle checks are conducted per unit SOP based on time available.
- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicles are prepared to move out in prescribed order of march.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.03.11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon has been ordered to provide support to an adjacent unit. A cross country movement at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The adjacent unit is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. Due to the enemy situation and tempo of operations, no infantry support is available for vehicle security. The enemy situation requires that a bounding technique of movement be utilized. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, air, and EW capabilities. The AAV platoon commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the absolute minimum and use covered communications.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans for the use of night vision devices.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify link up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and frequencies, and recognition signals.
- .3 \_\_\_ The route selection minimizes AAV exposure to the enemy.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines the ambient light level.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains effective command and control over the formation during night operations.
- .6 \_\_\_ The AAVs reach link-up point within prescribed time.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans primary and alternate means of communications to ensure effective command and control.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon has plans for evasive maneuvers that are easily coordinated and controlled.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon employs navigation aids, such as the GAIL lighting system, chemical lights, GPS, etc., to aid in movement as necessary.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans for and employs a quartering party, if needed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is providing .50 cal and 40mm fire support during movement from hasty positions. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from enemy troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ Section leaders demonstrate the ability to identify targets and direct effective fire on target using the appropriate weapons and fire commands. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_ Crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit the targets they are assigned.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ AAV guncrews perform reconnaissance by fire, suppressive fire, engagement of point and area targets, and multiple engagements, as appropriate. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_\_ 50 cal. barrels are changed approximately every 1000 rounds if breaks in action make it feasible.
- .5 \_\_\_\_ While firing at a short halt, crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit an area target.
- .6 \_\_\_\_ Crewmen demonstrate proper actions during weapon failures.
- .7 \_\_\_\_ AAV unit reports SITREP to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator should be in a position where he can monitor fire commands as well as view the targets. Binoculars are required. All crews should be evaluated with the 90 percent rule applying.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELEMENTS OF A FIRE COMMAND

Fire commands must contain:

- Alert.
- Direction.
- Range.
- Assignment.
- Control.

TECHNIQUES OF FIRE

Different techniques are:

- a. RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE: Fire single burst with the goal of drawing return fire from the enemy. Vehicle should be in a defiled position.
- b. SUPPRESSIVE FIRE: Direct fire designed to inflict damage and casualties at known or suspected enemy positions. Fired in bursts of 10-15 rounds every 10 seconds.

ENCLOSURE (1)

c. POINT TARGET: A target covering a small area that can be hit by one of two burst of 10-15 rounds. Should be engaged from short halts.

d. AREA TARGET: Normally covers a wide area. Use of the "z" pattern is most effective.

e. MULTIPLE TARGETS: Suppressive fire is utilized. Multiple targets are engaged by different sections within the platoon(s). The targets providing the most immediate threat are engaged first.

---

TASK: 10C.03.13 CONDUCT AN ASSAULT

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon with embarked troops has encountered enemy stationary forces and must conduct an assault on their position.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ Reconnoiter the enemy position to find gaps or flanks that can be exploited.
- .2 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates the action of the platoon through previous rehearsed battle drills and control measures.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ The platoon executes a mounted/dismounted assault on the enemy position. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_\_ Continue to coordinate and send SITREPs to higher headquarters.
- .5 \_\_\_\_ Conduct consolidation. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_\_ Conduct reorganization. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

THE ASSAULT

The assault is identified by:

- Seizure of the enemy occupied position mounted/dismounted.
- Assault by mass/fire and maneuver.
- Exploit all enemy defensive weaknesses.
- Platoon uses terrain features to mask movement.
- AAVs dismount infantry and support by fire.

CONSOLIDATION

Upon consolidation, platoon must:

- Eliminate enemy positions.
- Defend and prepare hasty position.
- Establish security.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Establish fields of fire.
- Conduct reconnaissance.
- Prepare to continue the attack.

REORGANIZATION

During reorganization, platoon commander must ensure to:

- Replace key individuals.
- Evacuate wounded, KIAs, EPWs, and damaged equipment.
- Redistribute supplies, ammunition, and equipment within the unit, as necessary.
- Replenish all supplies, fuel and ammunition.
- Repair all vehicles.

---

TASK: 10C.03.14 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon has been ordered to conduct defensive operations in support of an infantry unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's OpOrd/FRAG Order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs move to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, visibility, and terrain.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions.
- .6 \_\_\_ AAV crews occupy vehicle fighting positions.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAV crews prepare range cards.
- .8 \_\_\_ Section leaders prepare fire plan sketches.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines the need for camouflage netting.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around positions.
- .11 \_\_\_ AAV platoon lays communications wire, if time permits.
- .12 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit to select alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses movement from positions.
- .13 \_\_\_ Crewmen utilize night vision devices.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14 \_\_\_ The platoon is prepared to move to counterattack position, when ordered.
- .15 \_\_\_ The platoon rehearses counter-attack if situation permits.
- .16 \_\_\_ The platoon rehearses movement back to subsequent battle position if in a mobile defense.
- .17 \_\_\_ The platoon conducts reconnaissance of subsequent battle position, if applicable.
- .18 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs constantly improving vehicle position.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

AAV PLATOON COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The AAV platoon commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to higher headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.
- Camouflage techniques.
- Control of key terrain.
- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated Target Reference Points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and Armor Kill Zones (AKZs).
- Cover for likely fields of approach.
- Long range and flanking fires.
- Supplemental positions.
- Coordination with adjacent units.
- Plans for close and midrange fires.
- Plan for withdrawal.
- Designated priority of work.
- Assignment of target priorities.
- Construct/Coordinate emplacement of obstacles.

---

TASK: 10C.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is providing fire support from defensive positions at night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicle.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Crew chief checks boresight of the vehicles weapons station.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs make appropriate range cards. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Section leaders make fire plan sketches.
- .4 \_\_\_ Based on the range card, crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 50 cal against suitable targets.
- .5 \_\_\_ Based on range cards, AAV crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 40mm grenade launcher against suitable targets.
- .6 \_\_\_ AAV organic firepower assets are employed per control measures in effect at the time of engagement. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Pyrotechnics are fired to provide ambient light to ensure the target is being hit if NVGs are not available or utilized.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target reference point.
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.
- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Azimuth.
- Range.
- Evaluation.

---

TASK: 10C.03.16 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is supporting embarked infantry personnel. Enemy forces have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV crews correctly load and fire the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher.
- .2 \_\_\_ Lays down a smoke screen.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV crews demonstrate immediate action on the M257 Grenade Launcher. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M-257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, rearm system and attempt to fire.
- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, gunner checks for properly seated grenade. Secure turret hatch, turn electrical power on, rearm and attempt to fire.
- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Wait 10 seconds, remove grenade and stow the round to turn in later to EOD personnel for disposal.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MPS 10C.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in direct support. An AAV has become a combat casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Medvac SITREPS are to be sent to higher headquarters.
- .3 \_\_\_ The crew of disabled AAV, with platoon maintenance chief, conducts battle damage assessment and makes repairs, if possible.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant requests a recovery vehicle through the supported or parent unit.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit including the location of, and route to, the recovery site. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Disabled vehicle(s) and/or equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests replacement vehicle, if tactically required.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crewmen use approved methods of AAV destruction to prevent the enemy use of vehicle if it cannot be salvaged or recovered.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task including simulated destruction of AAV.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery effort coordination:

- Coordination with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
- Identifying location and a route to vehicle/equipment.
- Locating vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
- Ensuring security augmentation, if tactically required.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OF CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP 4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
- Select route that minimizes exposure.
- Enforce all safety regulations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Rig for evacuation.
- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

---

TASK: 10C.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is tasked to support tactical operations either afloat and/or on land. Initial planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported and/or parent unit. Final preparations for supportability have been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV platoon commander and/or AAV parent unit maintenance provide input into the logistics plan. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV crews conduct timely crew maintenance (second echelon maintenance and below) prior to deployment.
- .3 \_\_\_ Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the platoon commander and the supported unit commander.
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV crews are trained in all the operation, preventative maintenance, and lubrication tasks related to their vehicle.
- .5 \_\_\_ Trained maintenance personnel from the parent company are attached to the platoon and are located well forward and readily available to the AAV unit. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon carries an operational block of repair parts while deployed, to include PEB, extended maintenance materials, and disposable items for all organic equipment.
- .7 \_\_\_ Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on a routine basis, and a continuing service program exists.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MPS 10C.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10C.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is tasked to support the tactical operations of a ground combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both. The platoon is equipped for both day and night operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily.
- .2 \_\_\_ Platoon vehicles, are given regular operator maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them.
- .3 \_\_\_ Log books are filled out including operating entries and equipment records.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon employs it's firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Random wastage of ammunition is not tolerated by unit leaders.
- .5 \_\_\_ Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered about.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marine operating radios do not expose themselves to Radio Detection Finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade.
- .7 \_\_\_ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline, particularly during halts.
- .8 \_\_\_ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If a unit is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communications procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the unit throughout the exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

The AAV platoon is supporting tactical operations. The operation is of limited duration; however, the AAV platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

---

TASK: 10C.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is supporting tactical operations. The operation is of limited duration; however, the AAV platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander includes preventative maintenance time during operational planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ Vehicle crew chiefs assign crewman areas of responsibility for PM and supervise their efforts.
- .3 \_\_\_ Crewmen display a sense of urgency when conducting PMs.
- .4 \_\_\_ Preoperation, during operation, and post operation checks are conducted.
- .5 \_\_\_ Proper startup procedures are followed.
- .6 \_\_\_ During scheduled/nonscheduled halts, PM checks are performed. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down.
- .8 \_\_\_ Additional equipment including weapons, receive continuous maintenance by crewmen.
- .9 \_\_\_ Safety rules and regulations are followed per unit SOP.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crewmen conduct PM on communications equipment.
- .11 \_\_\_ Maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with crew chiefs to identify corrective maintenance needs.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

HALT CHECKS

Halt checks are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the platoon makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check the hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks.

---

TASK: 10C.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is tasked to provide direct support tactical operations to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defense actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAVs/Personnel maintain dispersion during movement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the conclusion of an attack or defensive action.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAVs maintain assigned positions and intervals during maneuvering.
- .3 \_\_\_ All platoon vehicles maintain dispersion during halts, in assembly areas, and when deployed in the defense.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

TASK: 10C.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is tasked to provide direct support of a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Individual Marines demonstrate attention to detail when camouflaging platoon vehicles and equipment to include protection against overhead observation.
- .2 \_\_\_ When halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged with reflective surfaces dulled.
- .3 \_\_\_ Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or are concealed with natural material.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander stresses placement of men and material in areas that provide cover and concealment from casual detection by enemy air and ground assets. Use of shadow areas for hasty concealment is stressed.
- .5 \_\_\_ Covered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of fire. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Crew members correctly generate vehicle smoke for screening if required by the tactical commander.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon selects and prepares a position that offers the best camouflage and cover.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator observes individual Marines and the platoon. This task is applicable throughout the operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

COVERED POSITION

Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements:

- Position allows the best possible observation and fields of fire consistent with the terrain and tactical situation.
- Weapons mounted on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas.
- Vehicle's hull is protected from direct fire from the front.

---

TASK: 10C.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is moving and is engaged by enemy infantry, combat vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV platoon returns fire immediately, if in range.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon employs smoke to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate.
- .3 \_\_\_ The AAVs initiate evasive action and use available terrain features/dispersion.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests immediate fire support from mortars, artillery, NGF, and/or aircraft if available.
- .6 \_\_\_ Spot reports are submitted to the supported unit headquarters.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander continues to develop the situation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or mortar, is required.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE

CONDITION(S): AAV platoon is moving and comes under indirect fire from an unknown source.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAVs move through the impact area, continue the mission, and button up as appropriate.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon employs smoke to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures dispersion and uses evasive maneuvers to maximize use of available covering terrain.
- .4 \_\_\_ When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 Report, as appropriate.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon submits spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.05.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in direct support of tactical operations. The operations order requires the AAV platoon to operate covered circuits.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to operate COMSEC equipment.
- .2 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to use encryption devices.
- .3 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to use authentication tables.
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV crews understand and demonstrate "beadwindow" procedures.
- .5 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs and section leaders are able to explain the capabilities of the vehicle communications system in the AAVP7A1 to supported personnel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .6 \_\_\_ Demonstrates radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum.
- .7 \_\_\_ Reports inoperable communications equipment in a timely manner.
- .8 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to pass information by alternate means.
- .9 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late net entry, if required.
- .10 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot Start.
- .11 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer SOI, COMSEC, FH data/Sync time from ANCD to ANCD (supported units to platoon).
- .12 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to ANCD and PLGR to RT.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW)

CONDITION(S): Enemy forces have the capability to conduct ESM and ECM throughout the radio spectrum. Initiative deception and frequency jamming are being used. Numerous items of friendly communications equipment are known to be in the hands of the enemy, and they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. Enemy antennas are located well forward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan operate in the covered mode.
- .2 \_\_\_ CEOI is followed; daily changing frequencies and call signs are used.
- .3 \_\_\_ Operators adhere to emission control (EMCON) procedures.
- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicle commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication intercept.
- .5 \_\_\_ Authentication is required by Marines guarding uncovered radio nets.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines operating radios do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts and continue to attempt to communicate.
- .7 \_\_\_ Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is reported to the supported unit by a "MLJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means in a timely manner.
- .8 \_\_\_ Relays communications by alternate means when radio are effectively jammed.
- .9 \_\_\_ Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BEADWINDOW" security violations.
- .10 \_\_\_ Expedient radio antennas are employed, when feasible.
- .11 \_\_\_ Low priority and routine messages are sent by other than radio means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .12 \_\_\_ Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to communicate.
- .13 \_\_\_ Brevity codes promulgated by the appropriate communications SOP are employed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT

CONDITION(S): The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV unit has established procedures for both active and passive air defense.
- .2 \_\_\_ Air guards are designated. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon has an alarm system to warn of air attack.
- .4 \_\_\_ Planned procedures are used to alert all personnel on board the AAVs to air attack.
- .5 \_\_\_ Crewmen are aware of, and react to, the meaning of the alarm.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon's maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage attacking aircraft.
- .7 \_\_\_ If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the platoon takes appropriate passive measures. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ If the platoon is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft, the AAVs take appropriate active defensive actions. (KI)
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at the attacking aircraft.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by flash message.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, ensures that enemy air activity corresponds to contemporary threat air tactics, and that threat aircraft type is announced to the evaluated unit.

KEY INDICATORS:

#### AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving units increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet, fixed-wing prop, or rotary wing.
- Use the signal established as the alarm for attack.
- Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

ENCLOSURE (1)

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

If adequate advance warning alerts the AAV platoon to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
- Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT

Once the AAV platoon has taken up a passive anti-air posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the AAV platoon should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the AAV platoon, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

- On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft; i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.
- Employ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

---

TASK: 10C.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is moving in a rear area without embarked troops onboard, and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to impulse a mine. The enemy is captured with both the explosive device and documents.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon processes EPWs per the Marine Corps Battle Skills Test (MBST) Manual. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means.
- .3 \_\_\_ Marines handling wounded or sick EPWs ensure they receive proper medical care.
- .4 \_\_\_ EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas masks, etc.).
- .5 \_\_\_ EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

EPW PROCESSING:

EPWs are processed in accordance with the following:

- Individual Marines handling EPWs segregate them by type: Officers, NCOs, unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc.
- EPWs are searched immediately after capture, material found is tagged per the EPW from whom it was taken.
- EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
- EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
- Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from hazards of enemy fire.

---

TASK: 10C.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in support and has been tasked with outfitting an AAV to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are with the platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV platoon briefs its MEDEVAC capabilities to the supported unit.
- .2 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC procedures, priorities, and required reports.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable.
- .4 \_\_\_ Marines dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in the treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
- .5 \_\_\_ Lightly wounded Marines apply self aid.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes for evacuation. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance.
- .8 \_\_\_ Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of command.
- .9 \_\_\_ Wounded Marines' equipment is handled per Op order.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable in all evaluations, and should be simulated by evaluator or TECG input to ensure knowledge.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

CHAIN OF EVACUATION

AAV crewman should be aware of all possible means to MEDVAC personnel. Location of aid stations should be noted in operations orders. Each AAV platoon should have a corpsmen assigned to assist in medical treatment and evacuation.

---

TASK: 10C.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon is in support of day/night tactical operations both from the sea and on land.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ A safety brief is conducted prior to water operations.
- .2 \_\_\_ All embarked personnel must wear helmets and carry weapons with muzzles down. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ All personnel wear inflatable preservers with serviceable CO2 cartridges during water operations.
- .4 \_\_\_ Safety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne.
- .5 \_\_\_ Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment over a life preserver and loose enough to jettison without delay.
- .6 \_\_\_ Embarked personnel are provided an individual vision light during night operations that is attached to the life preserver.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel are restricted from riding on top of a moving AAV.
- .8 \_\_\_ Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch.
- .9 \_\_\_ No smoking is allowed.
- .10 \_\_\_ AAVs maintain a distance of at least 50 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne.
- .11 \_\_\_ An AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to ensure the door is secure during all waterborne operations.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

HELMETS

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet and carry weapons with muzzles down.

LIFE PRESERVERS

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewmen and embarked personnel.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck and under equipment while vehicles are waterborn, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MPS 10C.06 - NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10C.06.01 PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the AAV platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV platoon possesses procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports required.
- .2 \_\_\_ All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the table of equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual.
- .3 \_\_\_ All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to trained operators.
- .4 \_\_\_ NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacement actions are taken.
- .5 \_\_\_ All decontamination devices are ready for training.
- .6 \_\_\_ MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level.
- .7 \_\_\_ Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination markers.
- .8 \_\_\_ All elements of the platoon maximize the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the platoon information to expect an imminent NBC attack by the enemy and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): AAV platoon commander is informed that nuclear weapons have been used in the theater of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Backup command, control, and communication procedures are used as needed.
- .2 \_\_\_ Subordinate/displaced elements are alerted, if applicable.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon continues the mission while implementing actions to minimize casualties and damage.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeve, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two layered uniform.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on the ground, as dictated by the time of the nuclear burst and/or the mission.
- .7 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE).
- .8 \_\_\_ Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the appropriate radiac detector devices.
- .9 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from heat, and radiation.
- .11 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel use standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Nuclear burst has occurred or is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Chain of command and communications are maintained or reestablished. AAVs resume mission, if possible.
- .3 \_\_\_ NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure means when possible.
- .4 \_\_\_ Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point.
- .5 \_\_\_ Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP.
- .6 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the appropriate radiac detection devices.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator announces that a nuclear blast either has occurred at a given location, or that a blast is imminent. A blast can initiate platoon action/evaluation when the commander has been informed of the pending nuclear attack.

Evaluators will assess constructive casualties due to blast, heat, radiation, and Electro Magnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

TASK: 10C.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred. The AAV platoon's location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The platoon gets effective downwind messages at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished about 45 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about 4 hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's mission is performed concurrently with all other actions.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival and subordinate elements are notified.
- .3 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is maintained using the appropriate radiac detector devices.
- .4 \_\_\_ Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from fallout.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout effects. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means.
- .7 \_\_\_ Unit total dose information is measured using the appropriate radiac detector devices and report to the supported command element using available secure means.
- .8 \_\_\_ Exposure is minimized while the command element determine if relocation to a clean area is necessary.
- .9 \_\_\_ Personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment while minimizing selves and casualties to radiation.
- .10 \_\_\_ Casualties and fatalities are assessed.
- .11 \_\_\_ Vehicles are assessed for damage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.
- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

---

TASK: 10C.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

ENCLOSURE (1)

CONDITION(S): Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are contaminated. The hazard to personnel does not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes decontamination priorities.
- .2 \_\_\_ A hasty decontamination point is established out of the contaminated area.
- .3 \_\_\_ Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is tactical.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices occurs. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Contaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined.
- .8 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to higher headquarters.
- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel are decontaminated as necessary.
- .10 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .11 \_\_\_ Total dose information for the hasty decontamination area is recorded and reported to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet on wet and dry on dry. If the contamination is wet, utilize buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminant is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

---

TASK: 10C.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation forces the AAV platoon to cross a radiologically contaminated area.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback dose rate.
- .2 \_\_\_ Reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
- .4 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .5 \_\_\_ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined.
- .6 \_\_\_ Decontamination priorities are established and performed as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander records the unit total dose information and reports the results to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the AAV platoon commander with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The AAV platoon commander receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM 21-40, pages 6-24 and 6-15. The platoon is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 to 3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt.
- .2 \_\_\_ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is available to the platoon commander.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1, 2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted fallout zone).
- .4 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ All platoon personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two-layered uniform.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground, as the time of the blast or the mission dictates.
- .8 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .9 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE).
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledge the warning before the expected time of burst. All platoon elements have been warned and protective measures implemented.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator Simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery blast simulator, or informs the unit that a nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon in support is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commanders have and use chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical defense and decontamination procedures.
- .2 \_\_\_ All platoon elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and commander's guidance.
- .3 \_\_\_ Mission essential tasks that are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods of task performance, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional personnel, are planned.
- .4 \_\_\_ Marines perform up to standard in donning the protective mask and chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination.
- .5 \_\_\_ The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon continues its primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize NBC casualties and damage.
- .7 \_\_\_ Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter halves, or ponchos.
- .8 \_\_\_ Detector paper is affixed to visible horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment.
- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination is checked to ensure the M11 is filled, individuals have complete serviceable decontamination kits, and there is an available water source with a supporting road network.
- .10 \_\_\_ Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher headquarters.
- .11 \_\_\_ Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored.
- .12 \_\_\_ Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability.
- .13 \_\_\_ Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms.
- .14 \_\_\_ Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning message via headset while wearing the protective mask.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that an NBC attack is imminent.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10C.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

ENCLOSURE (1)

CONDITION(S): An AAV platoon in support is subjected to a chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel identify the chemical alarm and take immediate protective measures.
- .2 \_\_\_ Personnel automatically mask upon notification that the enemy has used chemical weapons, or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source.
- .3 \_\_\_ Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon continues its' primary mission for at least 4 hours while in MOPP 4.
- .5 \_\_\_ Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit if persistent agent.
- .6 \_\_\_ Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible and informs the supported commander of his findings.
- .9 \_\_\_ Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested by the platoon commander, if required.
- .10 \_\_\_ WIAs are decontaminated, or wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted.
- .11 \_\_\_ KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is alerted.
- .12 \_\_\_ Unmasking procedure is followed if nonpersistent agent.
- .13 \_\_\_ WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as mission permits.
- .14 \_\_\_ KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits.
- .15 \_\_\_ Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation.
- .16 \_\_\_ Expended chemical defense items are replaced as required.
- .17 \_\_\_ The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level as required.
- .18 \_\_\_ Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties". Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The

ENCLOSURE (1)

key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within 9 seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degree of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
  - c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
  - d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
  - c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
  - d. If no symptoms appear, the same marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear and reseal their masks.
  - e. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marines unmask for 5 minutes and the remask.
  - f. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

---

TASK: 10C.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel decontaminate individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon command determines the extent of decontamination required and decontamination priorities are established.
- .3 \_\_\_ Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or discarded.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.
- .6 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate:
  - a. Procedures are repeated.
  - b. Decontamination support is requested.
  - c. Risk of using equipment is accepted.
- .7 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher headquarters.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reduces MOPP level, as feasible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

1. Initial decontamination of platoon equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
  - a. Removing all gross contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
  - b. Utilizing decontamination apparatus to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used in a training environment).
2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
  - a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
  - b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped.

ENCLOSURE (1)

c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.

3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.

4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.

a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be the "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require a decontamination apparatus to be requested from higher headquarters.

b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within 6 hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once decontamination procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

---

TASK: 10C.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): While in support, the AAV platoon's equipment has been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies; equipment, and personnel to be furnished to his contaminated unit. The estimated time the decontamination will be completed is included in this coordination.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests route clearance to personnel decontamination station/equipment decontamination station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. The platoon's advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is dispatched to PDS/EDS.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for processing.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination begins as scheduled.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level, as feasible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

SECTION 10D  
MINE/COUNTER MINE PLATOON

ENCLOSURE (1)

INDEX OF TASKS

	PAGE
<u>MPS 10D.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10D.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING .....	10-D-1
2) TASK 10D.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT .....	10-D-2
3) TASK 10D.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION .....	10-D-2
4) TASK 10D.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING .....	10-D-3
5) TASK 10D.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING .....	10-D-4
6) TASK 10D.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING .....	10-D-5
<u>MPS 10D.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS</u>	
1) TASK 10D.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING .....	10-D-7
2) TASK 10D.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION .....	10-D-8
3) TASK 10D.02.03 EMBARK AAV .....	10-D-8
4) TASK 10D.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEMARKATION .....	10-D-9
5) TASK 10D.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION .....	10-D-10
6) TASK 10D.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT .....	10-D-11
7) TASK 10D.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV .....	10-D-13
8) TASK 10D.02.08 RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV .....	10-D-13
<u>MPS 10D.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE</u>	
1) TASK 10D.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-D-15
2) TASK 10D.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA .....	10-D-15
3) TASK 10D.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES .....	10-D-18
4) TASK 10D.03.04 SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS .....	10-D-19
5) TASK 10D.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD .....	10-D-19
6) TASK 10D.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES .....	10-D-20
7) TASK 10D.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING .....	10-D-21
8) TASK 10D.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH .....	10-D-21
9) TASK 10D.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH .....	10-D-22
10) TASK 10D.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT .....	10-D-23
11) TASK 10D.03.11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT .....	10-D-23

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 12) TASK 10D.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS ..... 10-D-24
- 13) TASK 10D.03.13 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS ..... 10-D-25
- 14) TASK 10D.03.14 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE ..... 10-D-27
- 15) TASK 10D.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN ..... 10-D-28

MPS 10D.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

- 1) TASK 10D.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS ..... 10-D-29
- 2) TASK 10D.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS ..... 10-D-30

MPS 10D.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

- 1) TASK 10D.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE ..... 10-D-31
- 2) TASK 10D.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM) ..... 10-D-32
- 3) TASK 10D.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION ..... 10-D-32
- 4) TASK 10D.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT ..... 10-D-33
- 5) TASK 10D.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES ..... 10-D-33
- 6) TASK 10D.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE ..... 10-D-34
- 7) TASK 10D.05.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION ..... 10-D-34
- 8) TASK 10D.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW) ..... 10-D-35
- 9) TASK 10D.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT ..... 10-D-36
- 10) TASK 10D.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR ..... 10-D-37
- 11) TASK 10D.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS ..... 10-D-38
- 12) TASK 10D.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS ..... 10-D-39

MPS 10D.06 - PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

- 1) TASK 10D.06.01 NBC OPERATIONS ..... 10-D-41
- 2) TASK 10D.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK ..... 10-D-41
- 3) TASK 10D.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK .... 10-D-42
- 4) TASK 10D.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST ..... 10-D-43
- 5) TASK 10D.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-D-44
- 6) TASK 10D.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA ..... 10-D-44
- 7) TASK 10D.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE ..... 10-D-45
- 8) TASK 10D.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-D-46
- 9) TASK 10D.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK ..... 10-D-47

ENCLOSURE (1)

- 10) TASK 10D.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION ..... 10-D-50
- 11) TASK 10D.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT .. 10-D-51

MPS 10D.01 - ASSIGNMENT TO SUPPORT OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.01.01 CONDUCT INITIAL PLANNING

CONDITION(S): An MCM platoon is given the mission to support tactical operations either as an attached unit or in direct support.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander promptly reports to the supported commander for planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts mission analysis.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues a warning order to section leaders.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander develops an AAV estimate of supportability.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander participates in a leaders recon with both the supported unit and other supporting element leaders to ensure AAV's are fully integrated into the supported unit's plan.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander recommends routes/axis of advance, determines time and distance of AAV movement, employment methods, and communication requirements to the supported unit. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Incorporates Operational Risk Management (ORM) into planning. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander develops appropriate plans after receipt of the supported commander's decision.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander attends the issuance of the supported unit's five paragraph order.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues his five paragraph order.
- .11 \_\_\_ All changes in operational readiness of AAVs are promptly reported to the supported unit or parent command.
- .12 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates all maintenance, recovery, and logistic requirements of AAV unit and establishes appropriate support arrangement. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The focus of this task is on the AAV platoon leaders as they fulfill their basic responsibilities to the supported unit. The evaluator should note that some of the requirements are one time actions and some are repetitive actions that will reoccur as the tactical situation changes.

KEY INDICATORS:

TIME MANAGEMENT:

Ensure commanders allocate 3/4 of available time for planning and preparation by subordinate units. Time is allocated at all levels. In order to fulfill requirements, commanders manage available time to ensure that appropriate rest (sleep) periods are available (tactical situation permitting) in order to ensure that peak efficiency and alertness is maintained.

ENCLOSURE (1)

OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

Ensure commanders utilize the five step ORM process, per MCO 3500.27, in their planning which includes: identify hazards, asses hazards, make risk decision, implement controls and supervise.

TYPES OF SUPPORT

Ensure that the type of support to be provided is determined for logistical purposes. In direct support the parent unit is responsible for logistical needs. If attached, the supported unit is responsible for logistical needs. The third category, general support, denotes that the AAV unit is supporting the entire force without priority to any given element. In general support, the parent command retains command, control, and logistics responsibility.

ROUTES/AXIS OF ADVANCE

Ensure that routes to be followed are carefully analyzed to include the use of METT-TSL.

---

TASK: 10D.01.02 RESPOND TO SUPPORTED UNIT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander adheres to the SOP of the supported unit on land, provides input from the AAV unit SOP for the waterborne phase.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon complies with the supported unit's operation order.
- .3 \_\_\_ Enters tactical and command nets of the supported unit command element per the operations order.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander provides input to the supported unit, consistent with changing tactical requirements, concerning MCM utilization.
- .5 \_\_\_ Operational reports are submitted per the operations order in a timely and accurate manner.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator determines if the MCM unit adhered to the supported unit's operation SOP.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.01.03 COORDINATE GATHERING AND DISSEMINATION OF INTELLIGENCE INFORMATION

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported company has intelligence data to be provided to the unit.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon has and uses an SOP from the parent AAV unit that provides procedures for handling intelligence matters, and addresses inter-operability with supported units.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests intelligence based on METT-TSL.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ All classified material is safeguarded and limited access appropriately allowed.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander stresses intelligence awareness for all assigned personnel. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures intelligence information is disseminated to section elements.
- .6 \_\_\_ Platoon is aware of the supported unit's EEI's.
- .7 \_\_\_ All unit leaders within the platoon know the procedures to be used in handling EPWs (See Task 10C.5.10, PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR).

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

INTELLIGENCE AWARENESS

Intelligence awareness includes:

- Knowledge of collection means available.
- Understanding of intelligence capabilities and limitations.
- Emphasis on OPSEC at all levels.
- Rapid reporting of raw combat information.
- Exploitation of information gleaned from EPWs.
- Development of relevant EEIs and OIRs.

---

TASK: 10D.01.04 COORDINATE COMMUNICATIONS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is assigned the mission to support tactical operations. The supported unit is conducting communications planning for all elements. The enemy has the ability to conduct ESM and ECM operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with supported unit's communications officer.
- .2 \_\_\_ All required communications nets are identified.
- .3 \_\_\_ It is ensured that an adequate number of frequencies, FH data and Net IDs are allocated.
- .4 \_\_\_ Plans for communications redundancy, simplicity, and brevity.
- .5 \_\_\_ Plans for the use of communications procedures contained in the supported unit's SOP or prearranged signals and other visual means which allow for brevity.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander identifies any interoperability problems.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains a copy of the supported unit's communication SOP.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander stresses communication security awareness for all personnel.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reviews the communications plan of the supported unit concerning secure voice equipment, correct key lists and edition numbers, and verifies that the MCM unit has assets available.
- .10 \_\_\_ Wire communication is stressed when appropriate in static or defensive positions.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon provides the supported unit's communications personnel with AAV-7A1 briefing/training.
- .12 \_\_\_ Communications reports are included in the reports control system.
- .13 \_\_\_ The platoon uses alternate communications methods as needed. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

ALTERNATE COMMUNICATIONS

The platoon must:

- Demonstrate awareness of communications capabilities and limitations during planning.
- Be prepared to erect antenna systems, utilize hand/arm signals, and lay wire when appropriate.
- Display cognizance of importance of communications security.

---

TASK: 10D.01.05 COORDINATE LOGISTICS PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The mission requires the capability to launch from ship to objective and/or operate on land during all periods of visibility. The supported unit OpOrd calls for full use of AAV assets.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts liaison with the supported company's staff immediately upon receipt of the mission.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander identifies MCM combat service support (CSS) requirements to the supported unit S-4 during the planning phase.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs comply with prescribed loads established by the unit SOP.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates with his parent unit concerning any logistics requirements beyond the supported unit's capability. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures vehicle recovery procedures are established.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander determines availability of AAV unit logistics and support vehicles, and informs the supported or parent unit.
- .7 \_\_\_\_ Emergency resupply procedures are established.
- .8 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander completes required CSS reports as designated in the reports controls system.
- .9 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes liaison with the MAGTF CSS element as required for higher level logistic support requirements not within the capability of the supported or parent units.
- .10 \_\_\_\_ The platoon sergeant has a system to rapidly and correctly identify required repair parts and to request them through the appropriate supporting or parent unit.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator examines the platoon's performance throughout all phases of operations.

KEY INDICATORS:

LOGISTIC SUPPORT

Ensure the AAV unit SOP covers:

- Procedure for requesting support when in either a general or direct support role.
- Request formats.
- Standardized loads for resupply.
- Specific procedures for recovery operations.
- Procedure for 3rd echelon maintenance under field conditions.
- Procedures for replacement of major end items.
- Ensure the supported unit is briefed on logistic requirements.

---

TASK: 10D.01.06 CONDUCT COMBAT REPORTING

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is assigned in direct support of tactical operations. The supported unit's SOP and OpOrder contain the required reports and their submission times. Additional logistic and/or administration reports may be required by the AAV platoon's parent organization.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander develops a system to comply with supported unit's operations SOP and OpOrder reports control procedures. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_ The type of report, format, and submission requirements are understood.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander completes all reports required to the parent organization as scheduled.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ Reports are submitted on time and are complete and accurate.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator obtains a full listing of all required reports prior to initiation of his evaluation of the platoon and ascertains that the supported unit requirements were available.

KEY INDICATORS:

REPORTS CONTROL

Ensure OpOrd or SOP stress brevity and include the following:

- Time of submission of required reports.
- Reports are submitted on "as required basis".
- Report formats permit "exception only" reporting to facilitate brevity.
- Method of submission for reports and alternate means.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.02 - AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.02.01 CONDUCT PLANNING

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is in direct support of a ground unit assigned the mission to conduct an amphibious assault. The MCM platoon is embarked on ATF shipping, and has begun detailed planning.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reports to the supported unit commander, attends the initial briefing, and receives the commander's guidance.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander performs mission analysis. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander prepares an AAV estimate of supportability.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander assists the supported unit in the preparation of planning documents.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander makes recommendation on AAV utilization during the ship-to-shore movements to include formations, tactics and techniques.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates MCM participation during the conduct of rehearsal.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates the details of organization/embarkation of his AAVs.
- .8 \_\_\_ All aspects of MCM employment are coordinated with naval control groups and ATF ships involved.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant determines maintenance requirements for AAVs, to include recommended system for maintenance, location of maintenance personnel and equipment.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant determines requirements of AAVs for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during ashore, and coordinates them with the supported unit's staff and parent command.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant plans for the employment of signals, marking devices, etc., for AAV control during night landings and operations ashore (e.g. GAIL lights, chemical lights).
- .12 \_\_\_ The platoon commander lists safety requirements for embarking in AAVs and reviews the safety training programs for the unit to be embarked.
- .13 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with his section leaders and crew chiefs on plans for rehearsal of infantry embarking aboard AAVs while on ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION ANALYSIS

Ensure that the AAV platoon commander's analysis of the mission is per METT-TSL.

- Ensure platoon commander develops plan for any special support.
- Develops bump plan for any disabled AAV.

ENCLOSURE (1)

PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

The MCM platoon is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

---

TASK: 10D.02.02 PREPARE FOR EMBARKATION

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is tasked to support an amphibious assault. The embarkation plan is being developed by the supported unit based on the scheme of maneuver and loading plan.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAV representatives attend planning conferences as directed. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander completes required embarkation documentation and submits those tables in a timely manner.
- .3 \_\_\_ Preparations for the embarkation of AAVs is completed prior to the arrival of assault shipping.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant develops plans for loading of AAVs in the correct sequence aboard assault shipping.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the various documents required for the completion of the embarkation plan contained in FMFM 4-2, Amphibious Embarkation.

KEY INDICATORS:

PLANNING CONFERENCES

Ensure that planning conferences discuss:

- Embarkation of vehicles and crews.
  - Embarkation of command, maintenance, and communication personnel requested to support vehicle commitments.
  - Loading of supplies and equipment such as fuel, ammunition (both smoke and antipersonnel), and repair parts to support embarked vehicles.
  - Staffing and equipping ATF ships designated as AAV repair ships.
- 

TASK: 10D.02.03 EMBARK AAV

CONDITION(S): Planning conferences have been completed, and the MCM platoon is embarking Amphibious Task Force (ATF) shipping with personnel on board the AAVs.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures surf report has been submitted per AAV parent unit SOP.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chief ensure all embarked personnel are wearing a serviceable life jacket with inflation cartridges and that a proper safety brief is conducted.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures positive communications is established with the ship.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander/platoon sergeant ensures a personnel manifest of all embarked Marines is submitted prior to splashing.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures prewater operation checklist are submitted by crew chiefs prior to splashing.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures that rescue vehicles are designated. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Loading is completed as previously coordinated with the ATF representatives at the planning conference.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures AAVs are gripped down with appropriate devices on board ship.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

RESECUE VEHICLES

Ensure that while all vehicles are potential rescue vehicles, there is an AAV designated as the primary rescue vehicle.

---

TASK: 10D.02.04 PREPARE FOR DEMARKATION

CONDITION(S): While embarked aboard ATF shipping, the MCM platoon has completed landing plan rehearsals, and the landing plan has been adjusted and promulgated in its final form. The CATF has imposed EMCON.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts surf analysis based on latest surf report.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts final preparation under EMCON.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander attends ship pre-launch conference.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with ATF representatives on conduct of launch. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel are briefed on conduct of launch.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures ships ventilation fans are turned on before engines are started and warmed up.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAVs are marked with temporary chalk marks, etc., for ease of identification be embarked Marines.
- .8 \_\_\_ Crews have completed embarkation rehearsal and safety briefs are conducted with embarked infantry per the AAV unit SOP.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crews release, remove, and store the Grippes in the proper area.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crews embark troops and equipment per published time schedule.
- .11 \_\_\_ Crews ensure all gear is properly stored and secured.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .12 \_\_\_\_ The platoon sergeant collects and submits signed verified manifest roster and pre-water checklist to ship's 1st Lieutenant and ensures water tight integrity.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

COORDINATION PREPARATIONS

Ensure that the Platoon Commander discusses the following with naval representatives and the AAV crews:

- |                                                |                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| - Type of launch                               | - Launch interval                           |
| - Weather, sea and tidal conditions            | - Launch sequence                           |
| - Prelaunch warm up time and sequence          | - Ballast conditions                        |
| - Time for undogging AAVs                      | - Hand and arm signals                      |
| - Assignment of boat teams to AAVs             | - Flag and flashing light signals           |
| - Time to load man AAVs                        | - Frequencies and call signs                |
| - Staging AAVs                                 | - Designation of wave guides and commanders |
| - Time to launch                               | - Naval Control Group command and control   |
| - Launch signals                               | - Recovery of disabled vehicles             |
| - Barriers                                     | - Signals for emergency lifting or NGF      |
| - Radio checks per EMCON conditions            | - Stalled vehicle procedures in well deck   |
| - Beach characteristics                        | - Magnetic compass information              |
| - Boat lane location                           |                                             |
| - Multiple vehicle launches from a single ship |                                             |
| - Simulates launches from multiple ships       |                                             |

---

TASK: 10D.02.05 CONDUCT DEBARKATION

CONDITION(S): Preparation for launch are being completed; AAVs are staged, troops and equipment are loaded.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_ Crews make final preparation for launch on signal. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_\_ AAVs move to the "ready line" in proper sequence.
- .3 \_\_\_\_ AAVs launch on the signal of well deck control officer.
- .4 \_\_\_\_ AAVs accelerate and maneuver to clear stern of ship.
- .5 \_\_\_\_ AAVs complete debarkation in sequence per published time schedule.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

KEY INDICATORS:

FINAL PREPARATION FOR LAUNCH

Final preparations include:

- Ensure leaders keep crews alert and advised of time remaining to launch.
- Ensure Navy well deck personnel are briefed and look for plenum indicators to be in "up" position before splash.
- Ensure AAVs move to ready line without ground guides.

---

TASK: 10D.02.06 CONDUCT SHIP TO SHORE MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon has completed debarkation from naval ships and are proceeding toward the assigned beach.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAVs form in waves per the landing plan. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS). (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Platoon maintains internal communications per unit SOP.
- .4 \_\_\_ Proper interval between AAVs is maintained per unit SOP.
- .5 \_\_\_ The LOD is crossed per the landing plan.
- .6 \_\_\_ Emergency operations/vehicle recoveries are conducted as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ Wave commanders control maneuver and maintain the formation within the wave.
- .8 \_\_\_ The wave commander controls supporting fire of the AAV unit.
- .9 \_\_\_ Smoke is utilized for screening, as required.
- .10 \_\_\_ The wave commander controls all changes to waterborne formations outside the surf zone.
- .11 \_\_\_ The wave commander controls movement of AAVs through cleared lane.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

LANDING PLAN

The landing plan is the plan of the supported unit commander for landing his troops, equipment, and supplies in the proper formations, on the assigned beaches and landing zones, and at the times dictated by the scheme of maneuver. It provides for the control afloat of landing craft, AAVs, helicopters, and floating dumps. Normally, the landing force landing plan is prepared as Appendix 3 (Landing Plan) to Annex B (Amphibious Operations) of the operations order. The documents/tables which deal with the troops and their equipment are included as tabs to the landing plan. The plan for landing supplies is contained in the appendix to the CSS plan. The AAV element commander prepares or helps to prepare the amphibious vehicle assignment table, the serial

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

assignment table, the amphibious vehicle availability table, the amphibious vehicle employment plan, assault schedule, and the landing diagram.

#### ASSAULT SCHEDULE

The assault schedule prescribes the formation, composition, and timing of waves to be landed over the beaches. Both scheduled and nonscheduled waves are covered. Planning starts at the BLT level. BLT commanders determine the formation and composition of their respective waves; scheduled and on call.

The AAV commander provides input to the BLT commander and naval operations personnel on the PCS ship during the preparation of the assault schedule.

#### LANDING CRAFT AND AMPHIBIOUS VEHICLE ASSIGNMENT TABLE

The landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment table depicts the organization of troop units into boat teams and the assignment of boat team to waves or to a serialized element of a nonscheduled wave. It is prepared by the commanding officer of troops of each ship. The AAV commander advises supported commanders and staffs with respect to vehicle capacity and methods of employment. AAV platoon commanders on each ship assist in the preparation of this document.

#### SERIAL ASSIGNMENT TABLE

A serial is a group of troop units, supporting units, and equipment embarked on the same ship and which, for tactical or logistical reasons, are to be loaded on a specified beach at approximately the same time. The serial assignment table shows the following in tabulated form:

- Serial number.
- Title of unit.
- Approximate number of personnel in the serial.
- Material, vehicles, and equipment in the serial.
- Number and type of AAVs or landing craft required to transport the serial.
- Ship on which the serial is embarked.
- Remarks to include the landing category, designated wave, on call wave, or nonscheduled unit. Such remarks aid in rapid identification and lo action of the serial by control agencies.

#### LANDING SEQUENCE TABLE

Detailed plans for the ship to objectives movement of on scheduled units are set forth in the landing sequence table. It is used by troop and naval agencies as the principal document in executing and controlling the movement of nonscheduled units. The completed table forms the basis for embarkation and loading plans of the units concerned. The platoon commander advises as to which vehicle best meets the landing force requirement; where it would be best embarked, and other considerations pertaining to AAV employment.

#### LANDING DIAGRAM

The landing diagram is the graphic means to illustrate the plan for ship to objective movement of the scheduled waves of an assault unit. Each AAV is identified by two numbers: the first indicating the wave; the second, the position of the vehicle in the wave. The platoon commander prepares or assists in the preparation of this document.

ENCLOSURE (1)

WAVE CONTROL

The AAV wave commander maintains communications with the Primary Control Ship (PCS) and with the AAVs in the wave. The wave commander controls the wave to ensure it crosses the LOD on time, proceeds down the boat lane and touches down on time.

---

TASK: 10D.02.07 EVACUATE DISABLED AAV

CONDITION(S): An MCM platoon participating in a ship to shore movement has one of it's AAVs become disabled. A standby vehicle or boat is being moved into place to transfer the embarked personnel.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant designates a specific AAV as rescue vehicle during surf and waterborne operations.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs use appropriate day/night distress signals per unit SOP.
- .3 \_\_\_ Wave commander and platoon sergeant are notified by radio/appropriate signals, of the nature of the problem and the required assistance.
- .4 \_\_\_ Crew member(s) immediately notify embarked personnel of difficulties.
- .5 \_\_\_ Driver keeps master switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch to "water tracks," and advances throttle to 1800 RPMs if engine is operable.
- .6 \_\_\_ Driver attempts restart if engine is inoperable.
- .7 \_\_\_ Crew member assists embarked personnel topside for transfer. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ Embarked troops are correctly and safely transferred from the disabled vehicle.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crew member closes the cargo hatch, after personnel are transferred, to prevent taking on water.
- .10 \_\_\_ Evacuation procedures are completed for the disabled vehicle.
- .11 \_\_\_ Crew members are knowledgeable of safety procedures to be used when an AAV is sinking or when it has sunk.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TRANSFER OF PERSONNEL

If personnel must enter the water, the crew will ensure that their life jackets are inflated once topside. If time permits they will enter the water two at a time and remain as "buddy teams". The rescue vehicle will position itself upstream from the disabled vehicle. A boathook is used to assist in retrieving passengers.

---

TASK: 10D.02.08 RECOVERY OF WATERBORNE AAV

CONDITION(S): An AAV is disabled in the water with no embarked troops. The crew has notified the platoon sergeant per unit SOP.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The crew prepares the vehicle of towing.
- .2 \_\_\_ Rescue vehicle approaches vehicle on the leeward side.
- .3 \_\_\_ Tow lines are connected per the unit SOP.
- .4 \_\_\_ All hatches on both vehicles are closed, per unit SOP.
- .5 \_\_\_ Driver keeps master switch on, locks brakes, shifts transmission to neutral, towed vehicle is towed to high water mark on the beach.
- .6 \_\_\_ Tow lines are then disconnected and tow bar/cables are connected per unit SOP.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator must be familiar with the unit SOP concerning towing procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

PREPARATION FOR TOWING

Driver keeps master switch "on" shifts transmission to neutral, places mode selector switch in "water tracks", and advances had throttle to 1800 RPMs if operable. Disconnects Power Take Off (PTO) and Hydrostatic Steering Unit (HSU) as necessary.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.03 - SUBSEQUENT OPERATIONS ASHORE

TASK: 10D.03.01 PREPARE TO OCCUPY AN ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): An MCM platoon is ordered to move to an occupied assembly area. The platoon is required to be task organized upon arrival in the assembly area, and to be ready to embark Marines, their weapons, ammunition, and equipment.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander task organizes and assigns AAVs to the unit.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates resupply means.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander considers OPSEC measures during the planning of the movement.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates designated routes with the supported unit to resolve movement schedules, and identify known obstacles, location of friendly rear units, the location of any passed enemy units or obstacles, etc.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans route(s) of march that offers the most cover and concealment.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander develops, in coordination with the supported units FSC, a fire support plan, and receives frequencies and call signs of fire control nets.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander, in conjunction with the supported unit, dispatches a quartering party to coordinate the arrival at, and defense of, the assembly area.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander demonstrates knowledge of planning and time and distance when designating control measures (check points, release points, etc.) to ensure an orderly move to the assembly area.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander provides details of vehicle markings to the supported unit in order for them to identify assigned vehicles.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.03.02 PREPARE FOR TACTICAL MOVEMENT FROM ASSEMBLY AREA

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is attached in direct support of an infantry unit, and is making final preparations for offensive operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs conduct vehicle operational checks.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicles are prepared for the operation, ammunition is replenished, and other special preparation requirements are completed prior to the commencement of startup procedures.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receives further guidance.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes liaison with the supported unit and receive further guidance from the commander.
- .7 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon commander conducts a brief detailing AAV support during the combined infantry/AAV operation, and coordinates immediate actions, i.e., ambushes, air strikes, artillery attacks, vehicle breakdown, etc.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander utilizes a terrain model, sketch, or other training aids when briefing the plan and/or conducting rehearsals, if time allows.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon movement order is issued to section/subordinate elements. (KI)
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon commander allows the opportunity for AAV personnel questions and comments.
- .11 \_\_\_ The AAV platoon commander ensures all AAV personnel understand the plan and are cognizant of their duties and responsibilities.
- .12 \_\_\_ AAV crew members are briefed on rules of engagement.
- .13 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs ensure all gear is properly secured on both the interior and exterior of vehicles.
- .14 \_\_\_ Route from present location to SP/LOD is reconnoitered to determine the time the movement must be initiated in order to comply with start time.
- .15 \_\_\_ The platoon commander conducts pre-combat inspection.
- .16 \_\_\_ Deficiencies noted during pre-combat inspection are corrected.
- .17 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with supported elements to verify signals/communications and actions to be taken upon enemy contact. (KI)
- .18 \_\_\_ Weapons are test fired, if the tactical situation permits.
- .19 \_\_\_ Communications checks are conducted in such a manner as to lessen OPSEC vulnerability.
- .20 \_\_\_ COMSEC material is issued, as appropriate.
- .21 \_\_\_ Vehicles are started simultaneously.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

WARNING ORDER

Ensure that the warning order includes:

- General information on the situation.
- Units to make the move and the anticipated sequence.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Special logistic support and delivery times required for the operation.
- Anticipated time of movement.
- Time and place the formal order is to be issued and who is to attend.

#### MOVEMENT ORDER

Ensure the movement order includes:

- Control measures.
- Time for radio check.
- Time to start engines.
- Time SP/LOD is to be crossed.
- Order of march.
- Rate of march, catch-up speed, and interval.
- Actions at halts and upon contact.
- Route clearance time, if applicable.
- Initial techniques of movement/formations.

#### COORDINATION WITH SUPPORTED UNIT

Ensure prior coordination between supported and supporting organizations includes discussion of at least:

- Route of advance.
- Signals and communications.
- Actions upon contact.
- Limitations of the supported unit.
- Supportability of the mission.

#### OPERATION ORDER

Ensure the operation order, either verbal or written when time permits, contains at least the following:

- Orientation.
- Clearly stated mission and order of priorities.
- Situation.
- Commanders' intent.
- Scheme of maneuver and available fire support.
- Definition of all control measures to be used; checkpoints, phase lines, etc.
- Identification of each specific objectives to be seized.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Any limiting instructions to temper engagements with enemy forces.
- Techniques of movement to be used to include designation of leading, trailing, and overwatch elements.
- Identification of overwatch positions to be occupied.
- Communication/signals to be used.
- Actions at the objective.
- Focus of effort.
- Be prepared for follow-on order missions.
- Disabled vehicle disposition.
- Critical logistics functions; i.e., rearming, refueling, emergency repairs.

---

TASK: 10D.03.03 CONDUCT PASSAGE OF LINES

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is located in the assembly area with embarked personnel. They have been given the task to conduct a forward passage of lines.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning order to sections/subordinate elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The route/axis of advance to include control measures are planned in detail. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander completes plan, issues order, and initiates communication checks with stationary unit.
- .5 \_\_\_ Conduct movement to passage lane as briefed.
- .6 \_\_\_ Co-locate unit CP with stationary unit's CP.
- .7 \_\_\_ Platoon conducts passage of lines.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures that supported unit has completed battle hand-over.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Control measures should identify:

- Designation of unit to pass.
- The enemy situation.
- Friendly situation and positions.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Time of passage.
- Coordinate passage points and lanes.
- Number and type of vehicles to pass.
- Patrol routes and OP locations.
- Obstacle types and locations of contaminated areas.
- Fire support plans.
- Vehicle locations and attack positions.
- CS and CSS to be provided and location assets.

---

TASK: 10D.03.04 SUPPORT BREACHING OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is task organized to support offensive breaching operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of order.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues warning orders to section/subordinate elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes liaison with supported unit and receives commander's intent.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander issues an order detailing actions required to support the breach. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Conduct the breach.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MISSION REQUIREMENTS

These include:

- 100 percent redundancy in breaching assets assigned to mission.
- Assign section positions and sectors of fire to include route to hide and fire positions.
- Location of obstacles.
- Brief mine field report.

---

TASK: 10D.03.05 CROSS THE SP/LOD

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is supporting offensive operations. The enemy, in addition to having direct and indirect fire and air capability, has EW capability. The

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

MCM platoon has received the supported unit's order which specified the SP/LOD location and crossing time.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's lead elements cross the SP/LOD on time.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crossing the SP/LOD is accomplished with minimal confusion and minimal radio communications.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs and supported unit crosses LOD in designated order of march.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon elements move out using designated movement techniques/formations. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit crosses release point on time.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

TECHNIQUES OF MOVEMENT

The various techniques of movement are described in general in task 10C.3.6 and specifically as follows:

- Traveling (See task 10C.3.8)
- Traveling Overwatch (See task 10C.3.8)
- Bounding Overwatch (See task 10C.3.9)

If a particular movement technique is not specified in the movement order, the AAV platoon commander recommends a technique most appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.

---

TASK: 10D.03.06 EMPLOY MOVEMENT TECHNIQUES

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is task organized to support offensive infantry operations. The enemy situation and operating area requires the employment of varying movement techniques. The enemy, in addition to direct and indirect fire and air capabilities, has EW capability. The supported unit's OpOrd, based on input from the MCM platoon commander, specifies movement techniques and signals to alter the movement techniques and formations, as well as procedures to be used upon contact with the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon maintains air/ground security at all times.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains positive control over lead, flank, and rear security elements.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon commander recommends changes to the formation as the enemy situation changes.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander recommends movement techniques that make the best use of the terrain.
- .5 \_\_\_ Moving unit communicates internally using visual signals, if appropriate.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_ Arrival at established control measures is reported to higher headquarters.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon responds immediately to the supported unit commander, if required.
- .8 \_\_\_ Crew members demonstrate knowledge of procedures to be used upon contact with enemy forces.
- .9 \_\_\_ AAVs employ smoke and suppressive fires for self-protection upon initial contact or as directed by the supported unit.
- .10 \_\_\_ AAVs use appropriate techniques of movement when crossing danger areas.  
(KI)
- .11 \_\_\_ Formations are constantly adjusted to compensate for the tactical situation and the terrain.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluators observe elements/entire unit during each move and apply the 90 percent rule.

KEY INDICATORS:

CROSSING DANGER AREAS

Upon reaching a danger area (e.g., wooded area, defile, bridge, urban area, obstacles to be cleared, etc.), the MCM unit establishes local vehicle security, establishes overwatch positions, and dismounts embarked personnel to secure the danger area as necessary. MCM unit moves danger area by echelon or as situation dictates. Coordination between the infantry and the supporting AAV unit is critical to the successful completion of the task.

---

TASK: 10D.03.07 MOVE BY TRAVELING

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon moves by traveling when enemy contact is not likely and speed is essential.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAVs move in the ordered formation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Sections/Subordinate units move by traveling.
- .3 \_\_\_ All elements move at the maximum safe speed.
- .4 \_\_\_ Platoon formations use covered and concealed routes to maximum extent possible.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reports crossing control measures as specified.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Ninety percent rule applies.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.03.08 MOVE BY TRAVELING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon moves by traveling overwatch when contact with the enemy is possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ MCM platoon's lead element continues to move, acting as the base unit, maintaining the rate and direction of march. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Trailing elements move at variable speeds frequently pausing to overwatch movement of the lead element.
- .3 \_\_\_ Trailing elements key their movement to terrain and overwatch positions so they can support the lead element if that element comes in contact.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator advises the platoon commander that he is entering the rear of the battle area and enemy contact is possible.

KEY INDICATORS:

LEAD ELEMENT MOVEMENT

The lead element's rate of movement must be governed by the ability of the trailing elements to arrive at and establish appropriate overwatch positions.

---

TASK: 10D.03.09 MOVE BY BOUNDING OVERWATCH

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon moves by bounding overwatch when contact with the enemy is expected/imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Bounding overwatch techniques are utilized.
- .2 \_\_\_ Overwatch sections/elements occupy overwatch position(s) and searches adjacent terrain. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ Overwatch positions offer good fields of fire to cover bounding MCM section/element.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reports the crossing of control measures to the supported commander as specified.
- .5 \_\_\_ Bounding section occupies subsequent overwatch positions, searches adjacent terrain, and verifies that it is secure.
- .6 \_\_\_ Bounding section reports by either signal or radio that it is prepared to overwatch.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator may deploy aggressors against lead squads/elements; 90 percent rule applies.

KEY INDICATORS:

ACTION OF OVERWATCH SQUADS/ELEMENTS

Squads/Elements must:

- Vehicles occupy suitable positions and prepare to fire.
- Positions permit observation and fires upon the moving unit's axis and terrain

ENCLOSURE (1)

which dominates that axis.

- Overwatch squad(s)/element engage detected enemy with all available direct fire weapons (within effective range).

---

TASK: 10D.03.10 CONDUCT TACTICAL HALT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is required to halt while conducting a tactical movement.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ With embarked personnel for area security, AAVs halt in a formation appropriate to the terrain, time available, and enemy situation.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes unit security immediately to include air watches.
- .3 \_\_\_ At halt, vehicle checks are conducted per unit SOP based on time available.
- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicles are prepared to move out in prescribed order of march.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.03.11 CONDUCT NIGHT MOVEMENT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon has been ordered to provide support to an adjacent unit. A cross country movement at night is required to link up with the adjacent unit. The adjacent unit is located at a minimum distance of 5 miles. Due to the enemy situation and tempo of operations, no infantry support is available for vehicle security. The enemy situation requires that a bounding technique of movement be utilized. The enemy has direct and indirect fire, air, and EW capabilities. The MCM platoon commander has been ordered to limit radio traffic to the absolute minimum and use covered communications.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans for the use of night vision devices.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the adjacent unit to specify link up point, route, fire support plan, call signs and frequencies, and recognition signals.
- .3 \_\_\_ The route selection minimizes AAV exposure to the enemy.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines the ambient light level.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains effective command and control over the formation during night operations.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon commander and section leaders can navigate using the Global Positioning System (GPS).
- .7 \_\_\_ The AAVs navigate the planned route and reaches link-up point within prescribed time.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans primary and alternate means of communications to ensure effective command and control.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon has plans for evasive maneuvers that are easily coordinated and controlled.
- .10 \_\_\_ The platoon employs navigation aids, such as the GAIL lighting system, chemical lights, GPS, etc., to aid in movement as necessary.
- .11 \_\_\_ The platoon commander plans for and employs a quartering party, if needed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.03.12 CONDUCT AAV GUNNERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is providing .50 cal and 40mm fire support movement from hasty positions. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from enemy troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Section leaders demonstrate the ability to identify targets and direct effective fire on target using the appropriate weapons.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit the targets they are assigned.
- .3 \_\_\_ Section leaders demonstrate the six basic elements of fire command. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV guncrews perform reconnaissance by fire, suppressive fire, engagement of point and area targets, and multiple engagements, as appropriate. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ 50 cal. barrels are changed approximately every 1000 rounds if breaks in action make it feasible.
- .6 \_\_\_ While firing on the move, crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit an area target.
- .7 \_\_\_ Crewmen demonstrate proper actions during weapon failures.
- .8 \_\_\_ AAV unit reports SITREP to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator should be in a position where he can monitor fire command as well as view the targets. Binoculars are required. All crews should be evaluated with the 90 percent rule applying.

KEY INDICATORS:

ELEMENTS OF A FIRE COMMAND

The elements include:

- Alert.
- Direction.
- Description.
- Assignment.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Control.

TECHNIQUES OF FIRE

These include:

- a. RECONNAISSANCE BY FIRE: Fire single burst with the goal of drawing return fire from the enemy.
  - b. SUPPRESSIVE FIRE: Direct fire designed to inflict damage and casualties at known or suspected enemy positions. Fired in bursts of 10-15 rounds every 10 seconds.
  - c. POINT TARGET: A target covering a small area that can be hit by one or two bursts of 10-15 rounds. Should be engaged from short halts.
  - d. AREA TARGET: Normally covers a wide area. Use of the "z" pattern is most effective.
  - e. MULTIPLE TARGETS: Suppressive fire is utilized. Multiple targets are engaged by different sections within the platoon(s). The targets providing the most immediate threat are engaged first.
- 

TASK: 10D.03.13 ESTABLISH DEFENSIVE POSITIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon has been ordered to conduct defensive operations in support of an infantry unit while on a night halt.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges receipt of the supported unit's OpOrd/FRAG Order.
- .2 \_\_\_ Platoon leaders conduct a reconnaissance of the assigned defensive positions.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAVs move to the initial defensive positions utilizing movement techniques appropriate to the threat, visibility, and terrain.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit and ensures vehicle security is provided.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates sectors of fire and the general location of vehicle fighting positions.
- .6 \_\_\_ AAV crews occupy vehicle fighting positions.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAV crews prepare range cards.
- .8 \_\_\_ Section leaders prepare fire plan sketches.
- .9 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines the need for camouflage netting.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crews make efforts to cover "track prints" around positions.
- .11 \_\_\_ MCM platoon lays communications wire, if time permits.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .12 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the supported unit to select alternate and supplementary positions, covered and concealed routes between fighting positions, and rehearses movement from positions.
- .13 \_\_\_\_ Crewmen utilize night vision devices.
- .14 \_\_\_\_ The platoon is prepared to move to counterattack position, when ordered.
- .15 \_\_\_\_ Platoon rehearses counter-attack if situation permits.
- .16 \_\_\_\_ Platoon rehearses movement back to subsequent battle position if in a mobile defense.
- .17 \_\_\_\_ Platoon conducts reconnaissance of subsequent battle positions, if applicable.
- .18 \_\_\_\_ Crew chiefs constantly improving vehicle position.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

MCM PLATOON COMMANDER RESPONSIBILITIES

The MCM platoon commander designates sectors of fires to maximize the effectiveness of the unit's weapons. These sectors are submitted to higher headquarters for inclusion in the overall defensive overlay. He places special emphasis on the following:

- Proper utilization of terrain.
- Covered and concealed positions.
- Camouflage techniques.
- Control of key terrain.
- Defense in depth with mutually supporting fires.
- Good observation and fields of fire.
- Designated target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas, boundaries, and armor kill zones (AKZs).
- Cover for likely fields of approach.
- Long range and flanking fires.
- Supplemental positions.
- Coordination with adjacent units.
- Plans for close and midrange fires.
- Plan for withdrawal.
- Designated priority of work.
- Assignment of target priorities.
- Construct/coordinates emplacement of obstacles.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

TASK: 10D.03.14 EMPLOYMENT OF AAV WEAPONS IN THE DEFENSE

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is providing .50 cal, 40mm, and small arms fire support from defensive positions at night. Enemy forces are located from ranges of 200 meters to 1500 meters. The targets vary from troops in trench lines and bunkers to armored vehicles.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant ensures distribution of night vision devices to crew chiefs.
- .2 \_\_\_ Crew chief checks foresight of the vehicles weapons station.
- .3 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs make appropriate range cards. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ Section leaders make fire plan sketches.
- .5 \_\_\_ Based on the range card, crewmen demonstrate the ability to hit a point target at 1500 meters while firing thirty (30) .50 cal rounds in three bursts at night.
- .6 \_\_\_ Based on range cards, AAV crewman demonstrate the ability to employ 40mm grenade launcher against suitable targets.
- .7 \_\_\_ AAV organic firepower assets are employed per control measures in effect at the time of engagement. (KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Pyrotechnics are fired to provide ambient light to ensure the target is being hit if NVGs are not available or utilized.

KEY INDICATORS:

CONTROL MEASURES

Published by the senior headquarters or supported unit and should include:

- Target reference point.
- Engagement areas/armor kill zones.
- Sectors and limits of fire.
- Unit boundaries.
- Target priorities for each weapon system.

RANGE CARDS

The four essential parts of a range card are:

- Target identification.
- Azimuth.
- Range.
- Elevation.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

TASK: 10D.03.15 EMPLOYMENT OF SMOKE SCREEN

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is supporting embarked infantry personnel. Enemy forces have engaged the element. The employment of smoke has been briefed prior to the commencement of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Lays down a smoke screen.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV crews correctly load and fire the M-257 Smoke Grenade Launcher.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV crews demonstrate immediate action on the M-257 Smoke Grenade Launcher.  
(KI)

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

IMMEDIATE ACTION

If the M257 Smoke Grenade Launcher does not fire on the first attempt, immediate action procedures are as follows:

- Shut down electrical power in the turret.
- Ensure grenade is properly seated.
  - If properly seated, attempt to fire, remove the grenade, place it in another tube and attempt to fire. If it still does not fire, then stow the round to turn in later to EOD personnel for disposal.
  - If the grenade is not properly seated, then reset and attempt to fire. If grenade still does not fire, change tubes and follow procedures as described above.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.04 - SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.04.01 CONDUCT RECOVERY OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is in direct support. An AAV has become a combat casualty and must be recovered.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Immediate actions are taken to extract personnel and/or extinguish fires, consistent with the tactical situation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Medvac sitreps are to be sent to higher headquarters.
- .3 \_\_\_ The crew of disabled AAV, with platoon maintenance chief, conducts battle damage assessment and makes repairs if possible.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant requests a recovery vehicle through the supported or parent unit.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon sergeant coordinates recovery effort with the supported unit including the location of, and route to, the recovery site. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Disabled vehicle(s) and/or equipment is successfully recovered/evacuated.
- .7 \_\_\_ NBC contaminated equipment is recovered/evacuated. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests replacement vehicle if tactically required.
- .9 \_\_\_ Crewmen use approved methods of AAV destruction to prevent the enemy use of vehicle if it cannot be salvaged or recovered.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, inserts sufficient vehicle casualty play into the tactical scenario to evaluate this task including simulated destruction of AAV.

KEY INDICATORS:

RECOVERY COORDINATION

The recovery effort includes:

- Coordination with the supported unit to ensure familiarization with the situation and tactical control measures in effect.
- Identifying location and a route to vehicle/equipment.
- Locating vehicle/equipment without excessive searching.
- Ensuring security augmentation, if tactically required.

RECOVERY, EVACUATION OF CONTAMINATED EQUIPMENT

NBC contaminated recovery operations have the following additional requirements:

- Crews adopt MOPP 4 and button up recovery vehicle before entering contaminated area.
- Select route that minimizes exposure.
- Enforce all safety regulations.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- Rig for evacuation.
- Recover vehicle/equipment and evacuate it to the EDS.
- Assist EDS personnel in decontaminating the recovery vehicle.
- Evacuate to the appropriate maintenance/support activity.

---

TASK: 10D.04.02 CONDUCT SUPPLY AND MAINTENANCE OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is tasked to support tactical operations either afloat and/or on land. Initial planning has been completed, as well as liaison with the supported and/or parent unit. Final preparations for supportability have been completed.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon commander and/or AAV parent unit maintenance and supply officers provide input into the logistics.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAV crews conduct timely crew maintenance (third echelon maintenance and below, prior to deployment).
- .3 \_\_\_ Supply and maintenance responsibilities are clearly understood by the platoon commander and the supported unit commander.
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV crews are trained in all the operation, preventative maintenance, and lubrication tasks related to their vehicle.
- .5 \_\_\_ Trained maintenance personnel from the parent company are attached to the platoon and are located well forward and readily available to the AAV unit.  
(KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon carries an operational block of repair parts while deployed, to include PEB, extended maintenance materials, and disposable items for all organic equipment.
- .7 \_\_\_ Preventative maintenance "spot check" inspections are conducted on a routine basis, and a continuing service program exists.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with TEC, inserts sufficient logistic and maintenance requirements into the tactical scenario to provide for evaluation of this task.

KEY INDICATORS:

ORGANIZATIONAL MAINTENANCE

Ensure organizational maintenance is organized to accomplish the following:

- Make repairs as far forward as possible.
- Identify and record precise discrepancies of the vehicles and equipment to include specific parts and actions required.
- Provide necessary personnel, parts, tools, and equipment to affect repairs.
- Repair and return vehicles and equipment to the unit in a timely manner.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.05 - CONTINUING ACTIONS BY MARINES

TASK: 10D.05.01 IMPLEMENTING DISCIPLINE

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is tasked to support the tactical operations of a ground combat element. Operations can be waterborne, ashore, or both. The platoon is equipped for both day and night operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Collective discipline is demonstrated by individual members being in control of themselves and contributing to mission accomplishment.
- .2 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel safeguard and clean their weapons, both individual and crew served, daily.
- .3 \_\_\_ Platoon vehicles, generators, etc., are given regular operator maintenance by the Marine(s) assigned to operate them.
- .4 \_\_\_ Log books are filled out including operating entries and equipment records.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon employs its' firepower in an orderly and organized fashion when engaged. Random wastage of ammunition is not tolerated by unit leaders.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines do not waste or abuse unit supplies or material.
- .7 \_\_\_ Supplies are safeguarded from the enemy and from the weather, and are not scattered about.
- .8 \_\_\_ Marines operating radios do not expose themselves to radio detection finding (RDF) by unnecessary, wordy, or repetitious message traffic. Standard passwords are used and communication checks are limited. All personnel using radios adhere to required standards of performance regardless of grade.
- .9 \_\_\_ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor noise discipline, particularly during halts.
- .10 \_\_\_ Unit cannot be detected by enemy as a result of poor light discipline.
- .11 \_\_\_ Marines wear/carry the prescribed uniform/equipment at all times including individual weapon, body armor, helmets, protective mask, first aid kit, safety boots, and NOMEX coveralls.
- .12 \_\_\_ Leaders actively promote field sanitation and personal hygiene by enforcing use of designated heads, good personal health habits, police of area, and inspection of the condition of feet and body sores.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: If a unit is located by RDF or observation as a result of noise, light, and/or communications procedures, the standard cannot be considered as having been met. Evaluators must determine if the unit is violating light, noise, and communication procedures discipline when no aggressors or EW support is available from the TEC. This task will be evaluated over the entire exercise and evaluators will note efforts of unit leaders to maintain and correct discipline. Improvement by the unit throughout the exercise, such as standards become consistently met, may result in a "yes" marking.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

TASK: 10D.05.02 CONDUCT PREVENTIVE MAINTENANCE (PM)

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is supporting tactical operations. The operation is of limited duration; however, the MCM platoon is supporting both the ship to objective movement and land operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander includes preventative maintenance time during operational planning.
- .2 \_\_\_ Vehicle crew chiefs assign crewman areas of responsibility for PM and supervise their efforts.
- .3 \_\_\_ Crewmen display a sense of urgency when conducting PMs.
- .4 \_\_\_ Preoperation, during operation, and post operation checks are conducted.
- .5 \_\_\_ Proper startup procedures are followed.
- .6 \_\_\_ During scheduled/nonscheduled halts, PM checks are performed. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Proper cool down procedures are followed before shutting down.
- .8 \_\_\_ Additional equipment, including weapons, receive continuous maintenance by crewmen.
- .9 \_\_\_ Safety rules and regulations are followed per unit SOP.
- .10 \_\_\_ Crewmen conduct PM on communications equipment.
- .11 \_\_\_ Maintenance personnel aggressively coordinate with crew chiefs to identify corrective maintenance needs.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable at all times. Evaluators must be familiar with proper first echelon maintenance and lubrication procedures.

KEY INDICATORS:

HALT CHECKS

Halt check are scheduled to occur during all long movements. Anytime the platoon makes unscheduled halts, PM checks are made. During short halts, a walk around inspection is made to check the hull and suspension components. Longer halts include engine compartment/fluid level checks.

---

TASK: 10D.05.03 DEMONSTRATE DISPERSION

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is tasked to provide direct support tactical operations to a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ AAVs/personnel maintain dispersion during movement, and in particular, do not bunch together at the conclusion of an attack or defensive action.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAVs maintain assigned positions and intervals during maneuvering.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ All platoon vehicles maintain dispersion during halts, in assembly areas, and when deployed in the defense.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Leaders set the example by personally heeding the rule of dispersion and, at the same time, take immediate action to disperse subordinates.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.05.04 EMPLOY COVER AND CONCEALMENT

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is tasked to provide direct support of a ground element. The tactical situation requires both offensive and defensive actions to occur.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ Individual Marine demonstrate attention to detail when camouflaging platoon vehicles and equipment to include protection against overhead observation.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ When halted for extended periods, vehicles are camouflaged with reflective surfaces dulled.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Equipment and tentage are provided with appropriate netting or are concealed with natural material.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon's leaders stress placement of men and material in areas that provide cover and concealment from casual detection by enemy air and ground assets. Use of shadow areas for hasty concealment is stressed.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ Covered positions allow for adequate observation and fields of fire. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ Crew members correctly generate vehicle smoke for screening if required by the tactical commander.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon selects and prepares a position that offers the best camouflage and cover.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator observes individual Marines and the platoon. This task is applicable throughout the operation.

KEY INDICATORS:

COVERED POSITION

Ensure that covered firing positions satisfy the following requirements:

- Position allows the best possible observation and fields of fire consistent with the terrain and tactical situation.
  - Weapons mounted on the vehicle can cover the assigned targets/engagement areas.
  - Vehicle's hull is protected from direct fire from the front.
- 

TASK: 10D.05.05 REACT TO DIRECT FIRES

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is moving and is engaged by enemy infantry, combat vehicles/armored personnel carriers, antitank gun, ATGM, or small arms.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon returns fire immediately, if in range.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon employs smoke to obscure the enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate.
- .3 \_\_\_ The AAVs initiate evasive action and use available terrain features/dispersion.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon employs all available direct fire weapons to suppress the enemy.
- .5 \_\_\_ The platoon commander requests immediate fire support from mortars, artillery, NSFS, and/or aircraft, if available.
- .6 \_\_\_ Spot reports are submitted to the supported unit headquarters.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander continues to develop the situation.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: A simulated or actual request for fire, artillery or mortar, is required.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.05.06 REACT TO INDIRECT FIRE

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is moving and comes under indirect fire from an unknown source.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Crewmen button up.
- .2 \_\_\_ AAVs move through the impact area and continue the mission.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon employs smoke to obscure enemy's observation and to screen the movement of AAVs, if tactically appropriate.
- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon commander ensures dispersion and uses evasive maneuvers to maximize use of available covering terrain.
- .5 \_\_\_ When under "automatic masking" directives, crews don protective mask, initiate NBC monitor/survey, and submit NBC-1 Report, as appropriate.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon submits a Spot report and SHELLREP to the supported unit as appropriate.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.05.07 ESTABLISH TACTICAL RADIO COMMUNICATION

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is in direct support of tactical operations. The operations order requires the MCM platoon to operate covered circuits.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to install and operate COMSEC equipment.
- .2 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to use KY device AN/CZY-10 for FH and COMSEC fill.
- .3 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to use authentication tables.
- .4 \_\_\_ AAV crews understand and demonstrate "beadwindow" procedures.
- .5 \_\_\_ Crew chiefs and section leaders are able to explain the capabilities of the vehicle communications system in the AAVP7A1 to supported personnel.
- .6 \_\_\_ Demonstrates radio discipline by keeping conversations short and radio checks to a minimum.
- .7 \_\_\_ Crewmen realize and demonstrate the importance of low power radio settings for short distance communications.
- .8 \_\_\_ Reports inoperable communications equipment in a timely manner.
- .9 \_\_\_ Demonstrates the ability to pass information by alternate means.
- .10 \_\_\_ Communications personnel organic to the platoon demonstrate the ability to employ all types of organic antennas and field expedient antennas, when required.
- .11 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a late net entry.
- .12 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to perform a Hot Start.
- .13 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to transfer SOI, COMSEC, FH data/Sync time from ANCD to ANCD (supported units to platoon).
- .14 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel demonstrate the ability to load time and date from PLGR to ANCD and PLGR to RT.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.05.08 RESPOND TO ENEMY ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW)

CONDITION(S): Enemy forces have the capability to conduct ESM and ECM throughout the radio spectrum, initiative deception and frequency jamming are being used. Numerous items of friendly communications equipment are known to be in the hands of the enemy, and they are familiar with our communication techniques and procedures. Enemy antennas are located well forward.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ All radio nets specified as covered circuits in the CEOI plan operate in the covered mode.
- .2 \_\_\_ CEOI is followed; daily changing frequencies and call signs are used.
- .3 \_\_\_ Operators adhere to emission control (EMCON) procedures.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- .4 \_\_\_ Vehicle commanders choose sites that provide for terrain masking to minimize enemy probability of communication intercept.
- .5 \_\_\_ Authentication is required by Marines guarding uncovered radio nets.
- .6 \_\_\_ Marines operating radios do not reveal effectiveness of enemy jamming efforts and continue to attempt to communicate.
- .7 \_\_\_ Proven or suspected enemy electronic activity is reported to the supported unit by a "MIJI" report via wire, messenger, or other secure means in a timely manner.
- .8 \_\_\_ Relays communications by alternate means when radio nets are effectively jammed.
- .9 \_\_\_ Radio operators do not compromise unit locations, strength, or commit other "BEADWINDOW" security violations.
- .10 \_\_\_ Expedient radio antennas are employed, when feasible.
- .11 \_\_\_ Low priority and routine messages are sent by other than radio means.
- .12 \_\_\_ Transmitting power is set at the minimum required to communicate.
- .13 \_\_\_ Brevity codes promulgated by the appropriate communications SOP are employed.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.05.09 RESPOND TO ENEMY AIR THREAT

CONDITION(S): The enemy has fixed wing and attack helicopter capability. Their all weather capability is limited. Laser guided munitions are available to the enemy.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The AAV unit has established procedures for both active and passive air defense.
- .2 \_\_\_ Air guards are designated. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon has an alarm system to warn of air attack.
- .4 \_\_\_ Planned procedures are used to alert all personnel on board the AAVs to air attack.
- .5 \_\_\_ Crewmen are aware of, and react to, the meaning of the alarm.
- .6 \_\_\_ The platoon's maneuver elements continue to maneuver, relying on overwatch elements and air defense elements to engage attacking aircraft.
- .7 \_\_\_ If given advance warning of approaching hostile aircraft, the platoon takes appropriate passive measures. (KI)
- .8 \_\_\_ If the platoon is taken by surprise by hostile aircraft, the AAVs take appropriate active defensive actions. (KI)

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .9 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander maintains fire control and causes the delivery of a heavy volume of fire at the attacking aircraft.
- .10 \_\_\_\_ The platoon reports attack by enemy air to the supported unit by flash message.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The senior evaluator, in conjunction with the TEC, ensures that enemy air activity corresponds to contemporary threat air tactics, and that threat aircraft type is announced to the evaluated unit.

KEY INDICATORS:

AIR GUARDS

Air guards are specifically assigned within each subordinate element designated to watch for the approach of hostile aircraft. Moving units increase the number of air guards, and specify sectors to cover 360 degrees of observation. They are able to:

- State the nature of the threat; i.e., fixed-wing jet.
- Use the signal established as the alarm for attack.
- Identify friendly aircraft that are in support of the unit.

PASSIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT□□

If adequate advance warning alerts the MCM platoon to incoming enemy aircraft, whether it be fixed-wing or helicopter, the following passive measures should be taken:

- Slow movement down to reduce dust signature if on the move.
- Use covered and concealed firing positions; take up positions beside hill masses that will mask the vehicles and limit the approach angle of the aircraft.
- Assign sectors of fire.

ACTIVE DEFENSE AGAINST ENEMY AIRCRAFT□□

Once the MCM platoon has taken up a passive anti-air posture, there is a possibility that enemy aircraft, especially fixed-wing, will not see the AAV unit and will bypass it. If so, the MCM platoon should stay in place until the aircraft are safely out of range then continue on with the mission. If the enemy air detects the MCM platoon, or the unit is ordered to engage the aircraft, the following steps are taken:

- On order, AAVs and embarked Marines engage the aircraft with onboard weapons systems.
- Maneuver to provide the most difficult target to the aircraft, i.e., if in a column turn at a right angle to approaching aircraft.
- Employ smoke to screen the force and move to preplanned secondary positions.

---

TASK: 10D.05.10 PROCESS ENEMY PRISONERS OF WAR

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is moving in a rear area without embarked troops onboard, and uncovers enemy soldiers attempting to emplace a mine. The enemy is captured with both the explosive device and documents.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon processes EPWs per the Marine Corps Battle Skills Test (MBST) Manual. (KI)
- .2 \_\_\_ Perishable information obtained from EPWs is reported to higher headquarters by most expeditious means.
- .3 \_\_\_ Marines handling wounded or sick EPWs ensure they receive proper medical care.
- .4 \_\_\_ EPWs are allowed to retain personal protective equipment (e.g., helmet, gas mask, etc.).
- .5 \_\_\_ EPWs and all recovered equipment/documents are transferred to higher headquarters as soon as possible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EPW PROCESSING

EPWs should be processed in accordance with the following:

- Individual Marine handling EPWs segregate them by type: Officers, NCOs, unranked, civilian combatants, sex, etc.
- EPWs are searched immediately after capture: material found is tagged per the EPW from whom it was taken.
- EPWs are required to remain silent and are not permitted to converse among themselves.
- EPWs are processed with speed to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
- Marines handling EPWs ensure that they are safeguarded from abuse and from hazards of enemy fire.

---

TASK: 10D.05.11 PROCESS CASUALTY EVACUATIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is in support and has been tasked with outfitting an AAV to provide for a waterborne means of evacuating casualties. Organic corpsmen are with the platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon briefs its MEDEVAC capabilities to the supported unit.
- .2 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon understands the supported unit's MEDEVAC procedures, priorities, and required reports.
- .3 \_\_\_ AAV litter kits are properly installed and serviceable.
- .4 \_\_\_ Marine dealing with casualties prior to arrival of corpsmen demonstrate emergency first aid knowledge in the treatment for shock, fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
- .5 \_\_\_ Lightly wounded Marines apply self aid.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .6 \_\_\_ Marines dealing with casualties are familiar with evacuation procedures, locations of medical facilities, and safe routes for evacuation. (KI)
- .7 \_\_\_ Marines who must be evacuated are transported to the treatment site in a tactically sound and expeditious manner with adequate on board medical assistance.
- .8 \_\_\_ Casualty reporting begins immediately through the chain of command.
- .9 \_\_\_ Wounded Marines' equipment is handled per AAV unit SOP.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: This task is applicable in all evaluations, and should be simulated by evaluator or TECG input to ensure knowledge.

KEY INDICATORS:

CHAIN OF EVACUATION

AAV crewman should be aware of all possible means to MEDEVAC personnel. Location of aid stations should be noted in operations orders. Each MCM platoon should have a corpsman assigned to assist in medical treatment and evacuation.

---

TASK: 10D.05.12 IMPLEMENTING AAV OPERATIONAL SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon is in support of day/night tactical operations both from the sea and on land.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ A safety brief is conducted prior to water operations.
- .2 \_\_\_ All embarked personnel must wear helmets and carry weapons with muzzles down. (KI)
- .3 \_\_\_ All personnel wear inflatable preserves with serviceable CO2 cartridges during water operations.
- .4 \_\_\_ Safety belts are not worn while the vehicle is waterborne.
- .5 \_\_\_ Embarked personnel wear normal combat equipment over a life preserver and loose enough to jettison without delay.
- .6 \_\_\_ Embarked personnel are provided an individual vision light during night operations that is attached to the life preserver.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel are restricted from riding on top of a moving AAV.
- .8 \_\_\_ Personnel do not ride in a moving AAV with more than their heads and shoulders extending above the hatch.
- .9 \_\_\_ No smoking is allowed.
- .10 \_\_\_ AAVs maintain a distance of at least 10 meters during periods of unrestricted visibility, or less during periods of restricted visibility while waterborne.
- .11 \_\_\_ An AAV crewmember positions himself at the aft personnel door to ensure the door is secure during all waterborne operations.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

KEY INDICATORS:

HELMETS

All personnel manning AAVs wear helmets. Crewmembers normally wear communication helmets while passengers wear the Kevlar issue helmet and carry weapons with muzzles down.

LIFE PRESERVERS

All personnel wear the inflatable type life preserver at all times during water operations. AAV unit provides life preservers for crewmen and embarked personnel. Inflatable type life jackets will be worn around the neck and under equipment while vehicles are waterborne, and not contained in the carrying case at the belt.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MPS 10D.06 - PREPARE FOR NBC OPERATIONS

TASK: 10D.06.01 NBC OPERATIONS

CONDITION(S): Threat forces have employed NBC munitions in the area aimed at destroying/disrupting operations and facilities. Due to the threat, passive and active defense measures must be used for survival of the MCM platoon.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon possesses the unit's SOP which outlines procedures for enemy NBC strikes and the reports required.
- .2 \_\_\_ All individual NBC defense equipment authorized by the table of equipment (T/E) is issued to each individual.
- .3 \_\_\_ All unit NBC defense equipment authorized by T/E is operationally ready and distributed to trained operators.
- .4 \_\_\_ NBC equipment shortages are identified and replacement actions are taken.
- .5 \_\_\_ M11 decontamination equipment units are filled (water used for training).
- .6 \_\_\_ MOPP level is established by the supported unit and AAV personnel are at or above required MOPP level.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander uses the IM-143 or the AN/PDR-75 radiac detector and reports the readings higher headquarters.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon's leaders understand MOPP levels for the control of exposure of personnel to chemical hazards.
- .9 \_\_\_ Marines properly identify NATO or threat NBC contamination markers.
- .10 \_\_\_ All elements of the platoon maximize the utilization of terrain features for cover, concealment, and topographic shielding from NBC attack.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Provide the platoon information to expect an imminent NBC attack by the enemy and integrate NBC scenarios with normal missions. Evaluator(s) should be school trained in the area of NBC defense (MOS 57XX) or be thoroughly trained in this area as part of evaluators' school.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.02 PREPARE FOR NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon commander is informed that nuclear weapons have been used in the theater of operations.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Backup command, control and communication procedures are used as needed.
- .2 \_\_\_ Subordinate/Displaced elements are alerted, if applicable.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon continues the mission while implementation actions to minimize casualties and damage.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .4 \_\_\_ The platoon implements protective measures, as directed by higher command element, consistent with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two layered uniform.
- .6 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on the ground, as dictated by the time of the nuclear burst and/or the mission.
- .7 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE).
- .8 \_\_\_ Periodic monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the AN/VDR-2 radiac set.
- .9 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .10 \_\_\_ All loose items, flammable/explosive items, food and water, which are not stored in AAVs, are secured and protected from heat, blast, and radiation.
- .11 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel use standard first aid procedures to provide self/buddy aid for nuclear blast and thermal effects.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.03 RESPOND TO THE INITIAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR ATTACK

CONDITION(S): Nuclear burst has occurred or is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Upon recognizing the attack, all personnel take immediate action to shield themselves from blast/heat of detonation.
- .2 \_\_\_ Chain of command and communication are maintained or reestablished. AAV resume mission, if possible.
- .3 \_\_\_ NBC-1 initial and follow-up reports, as required, are rapidly submitted to the supported command element by personnel designated or responsible for collecting the information. Reliable and complete reports are rapidly forwarded, by secure means when possible.
- .4 \_\_\_ Casualties are given first aid and are evacuated to a medical treatment station as the mission permits; fatalities are evacuated to a graves registration collection point.
- .5 \_\_\_ Damage assessment is submitted by secure means to the supported headquarters per SOP.
- .6 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is initiated, using the IM-174 radiac detector or the AN/VDR-2 radiac set.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: a. The evaluator announces that a nuclear blast either has occurred at a given location, or that a blast is imminent. A blast simulator can initiate platoon action/evaluation when the commander has been informed of the pending nuclear attack.

ENCLOSURE (1)

b. Evaluators will assess constructive casualties due to the blast, heat, radiation, and ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP). EMP casualties will be assessed by the evaluator for all communications systems (antennas, receivers/transmitters) that are exposed (not in a covered or hardened location/vehicle) during the simulated nuclear detonation

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.04 RESPOND TO RESIDUAL EFFECTS OF A NUCLEAR BLAST

CONDITION(S): A surface or subsurface nuclear detonation has occurred. The MCM platoon's location is within the predicted fallout zone. An M5A2 radiological fallout predictor, or substitute, is available. The platoon gets effective downwind messages at least once every three hours. NBC-2 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished to the unit about 15 minutes after the detonation, or prepared by the unit; NBC-3 report is furnished about 45 minutes after the detonation; NBC-5 report and/or contamination overlay is provided about four hours after the detonation.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's mission is performed concurrently with all other actions.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival and subordinate elements are notified.
- .3 \_\_\_ Continuous monitoring is maintained using the IM-174 detector or an AN/VDR-2 radiac set.
- .4 \_\_\_ Equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water are protected from fallout.
- .5 \_\_\_ Personnel take protective measures to minimize fallout effects. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ NBC-4 reports are forwarded, as required, to the supported command element by secure means.
- .7 \_\_\_ Unit total dose information is measured using the IM-173, AN/EDR-75 and reported to the supported command element using available secure means.
- .8 \_\_\_ Exposure is minimized while the command element determine if relocation to a clean area is necessary.
- .9 \_\_\_ Personnel provide first aid treatment to casualties in a nuclear environment while minimizing selves and casualties to radiation.
- .10 \_\_\_ Casualties and fatalities are assessed.
- .11 \_\_\_ Vehicles are assessed for damage.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Commander is advised of estimated time of fallout arrival.

KEY INDICATORS:

PERSONNEL PROTECTIVE MEASURES

Personnel take the following measures to minimize fallout effects:

- Place a wet cloth across mouth and nose.
- Make the AAV as air tight as possible.

ENCLOSURE (1)

MCO 3501.29  
17 MAY 99

- Utilize outer garments, such as ponchos, to the maximum extent possible.
- Keep the inside of the vehicle as clean as possible.

---

TASK: 10D.06.05 PERFORM RADIOLOGICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Fallout has ceased, and personnel and equipment are contaminated. The hazard to personnel does not allow time for the radiation to decay to a minimum level. Time and tactical situation permits hasty decontamination. Decontamination support is not available.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander establishes decontamination priorities.
- .2 \_\_\_ A hasty decontamination point is established out of the contaminated area.
- .3 \_\_\_ Movement to the decontaminated site is controlled and is tactical.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel wear appropriate protective clothing and equipment.
- .5 \_\_\_ Hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices occurs. (KI)
- .6 \_\_\_ Contaminated areas are marked with NATO standard NBC markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined utilizing the AN/PDR-27.
- .8 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location is provided to higher headquarters.
- .9 \_\_\_ Decontamination personnel are decontaminated as necessary.
- .10 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .11 \_\_\_ Total dose information for the hasty decontamination area is recorded and reported utilizing the determined IM-174 and/or AN/VDR-2 to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

EXPEDIENT DECONTAMINATION

The rule of thumb for expedient decontamination is wet and dry on dry. If the contaminant is wet, utilized buckets of water or if possible, splash the AAVs into a body of water. If the contaminate is dry, simply brush it off the vehicles and personnel.

---

TASK: 10D.06.06 CROSS A RADIOLOGICALLY CONTAMINATED AREA

CONDITION(S): The tactical situation forces the MCM platoon to cross a radiologically contaminated area.

ENCLOSURE (1)

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon's reconnaissance element is provided the turnback dose rate.
- .2 \_\_\_ The reconnaissance element is dispatched to reconnoiter new area.
- .3 \_\_\_ The platoon crosses expected contaminated area while employing contamination avoidance techniques.
- .4 \_\_\_ Operational Exposure Guidance (OEG) is not exceeded.
- .5 \_\_\_ After clearing the contaminated area, the degree of personnel and equipment contamination is determined, using the AN/PDR-27.
- .6 \_\_\_ Decontamination priorities are established and performed as required.
- .7 \_\_\_ The platoon commander records the unit dose information, using available IM-143s or AN/PDR-75s, and reports the results to higher headquarters.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: The evaluator will provide the MCM platoon commander with turnback and dose rates, if higher headquarters does not provide it.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.07 PREPARE FOR A FRIENDLY NUCLEAR STRIKE

CONDITION(S): The MCM platoon commander receives a friendly nuclear STRIKWARN per FM ZI-40, pages 6-24 and 6-15. The platoon is within Minimum Safe Distance (MSD) 2 two 3.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ The platoon commander applies the STRIKWARN to the situation map within 5 minutes after message receipt.
- .2 \_\_\_ Pertinent information regarding the planned detonation (time of burst, ground zero, fallout coverage, MSD, etc.) is available to the platoon commander.
- .3 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of its' vulnerability to the burst (within MSD 1,2 or 3) and residual contamination (within predicted fallout zone).
- .4 \_\_\_ Unit is advised of the measures needed to prevent casualties, damage, and extended interference with the mission.
- .5 \_\_\_ Unit implements protective measures, as directed by higher headquarters, consistent with the mission.
- .6 \_\_\_ All platoon personnel minimize exposure by rolling down sleeves, buttoning collars, and wearing additional clothing equal to a two-layered uniform.
- .7 \_\_\_ Personnel take cover in fighting holes, bunkers, armored vehicles, existing shelters (basements, culverts, caves, tunnels, etc.), or lie prone on open ground, as the time of the blast or the mission dictates.
- .8 \_\_\_ Vehicles are placed behind masking terrain.
- .9 \_\_\_ External electronic equipment is protected from ElectroMagnetic Pulse (EMP) and Transient Radiation Effects on Electronics (TREE).

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .10 \_\_\_\_\_ All loose items (small weapons, tools, etc.) and highly flammable/explosive items (POL, propellants, etc.) are placed in armored vehicles or shelters.
- .11 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander acknowledges the warning before the expected time of burst. All platoon elements have been warned and protective measures implemented.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Evaluator simulates nuclear detonation with an artillery blast simulator, or informs the unit that nuclear blast has occurred. Evaluator assesses casualties and damage to unprotected personnel and equipment.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.08 PREPARE FOR CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): An MCM platoon in support is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that a chemical attack is imminent.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon's leaders have and use it's parent organization's chemical defense SOP which addresses chemical defense/decontamination procedures.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ All platoon elements, if applicable, are directed to increase MOPP consistent with mission, temperature, work rate, and commander's guidance.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ Mission essential tasks that are difficult to perform in MOPP 4 are identified. Alternate methods of task performance, such as allowing more time, rotating or assigning additional personnel, are planned.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Marines perform up to standard in donning the protective mask and chemical protective overgarment.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The buddy system is established to facilitate monitoring/treatment for chemical agent poisoning and emergency decontamination.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon continues its primary mission while implementing all actions to minimize NBC casualties and damage.
- .7 \_\_\_\_\_ Portions of essential equipment, munitions, POL, food, and water supplies that cannot be placed in a shelter are covered with expendable or readily decontaminated tarps, shelter halves, or ponchos.
- .8 \_\_\_\_\_ Detector paper is affixed to visible, horizontal surfaces of protective clothing and on equipment, munitions, etc.
- .9 \_\_\_\_\_ Decontamination is checked to ensure the M11 is filled, individuals have complete M13, M258A1, and M280 kits, and there is an available water source with a supporting road network.
- .10 \_\_\_\_\_ Potential decontamination sites are reported to higher headquarters.
- .11 \_\_\_\_\_ Available chemical agent alarms are set up and monitored.
- .12 \_\_\_\_\_ Protective NBC equipment and supplies are properly used and maintained in a high state of serviceability.
- .13 \_\_\_\_\_ Marines demonstrate a knowledge of chemical agent symptoms.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .14 \_\_\_ Radio operators pass and receive alert/warning messages via headset while wearing the protective mask.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: CO/OIC is informed that chemical weapons have been used in the theater of operations and that an NBC attack is imminent.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

---

TASK: 10D.06.09 RESPOND TO A CHEMICAL AGENT ATTACK

CONDITION(S): An MCM platoon in support is subjected to a chemical agent attack.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel identify the chemical alarm and take immediate protective measures.
- .2 \_\_\_ Personnel automatically mask upon notification that the enemy has used chemical weapons, or upon perceiving a suspicious odor, airborne droplets/mist, or smoke from an unknown source.
- .3 \_\_\_ Marines do not unmask until given the command "UNMASK" by their immediate commander. (KI)
- .4 \_\_\_ The MCM platoon continues its primary mission for at least four hours while in MOPP 4.
- .5 \_\_\_ Type of chemical agent is identified utilizing the M256 kit or M8 paper, and reported to the supported unit.
- .6 \_\_\_ Contamination is located and marked with NATO standard markers.
- .7 \_\_\_ Location and type of contamination is reported to the supported command element.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines if immediate relocation to a clean area is necessary or possible and informs the supported commander of his findings.
- .9 \_\_\_ Priorities are determined for decontamination. Decontamination support is requested by the platoon commander, if required.
- .10 \_\_\_ WIAs are decontaminated, or wrapped, and marked as contaminated if decontamination is not performed, and evacuated. Medical treatment facility is alerted.
- .11 \_\_\_ KIAs are wrapped, marked as contaminated, and evacuated as mission permits. Graves registration collection point is alerted.
- .12 \_\_\_ Unmasking procedure is followed.
- .13 \_\_\_ WIAs are evacuated to the medical treatment facility as mission permits.
- .14 \_\_\_ KIAs are evacuated to the graves registration collection point as mission permits.
- .15 \_\_\_ Detector kits are serviced and returned to operation.
- .16 \_\_\_ Expended chemical defense items are replaced as required.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- .17 \_\_\_\_ The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level as required.
- .18 \_\_\_\_ Unit personnel are able to handle and provide first aid treatment to casualties in a chemical environment.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: Training site should support the type of activities being conducted and permit safe use of simulators and devices. Selected personnel are presented decontamination training kits and first aid treatment training devices to "treat designated casualties." Every attempt must be made to provide a realistic situation through devices, scenarios, or other aids developed through innovation. The key to a thorough evaluation is a realistic, believable, well supported situation imposed by the trainer/evaluator.

KEY INDICATORS: CHEMICAL CASUALTIES:

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within 9 seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degrees of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES:

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M-256 chemical agent detector kit.

1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
  - c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
  - d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
  - c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.

ENCLOSURE (1)

- d. If no symptoms appear, the same Marine

KEY INDICATORS:

CHEMICAL CASUALTIES

Chemical casualties are described as:

- Personnel without mask and hood within arms reach, without decontamination kits, or not wearing chemical protective clothing.
- Personnel not taking immediate corrective actions upon perceiving the attack, hearing a chemical agent alarm, being ordered to mask, or using incorrect masking procedures (not masking within nine seconds), or making incorrect use of decontamination kits/first aid treatment items.
- Marines who unmask or otherwise assume a lesser degrees of MOPP without being authorized to do so.

UNMASKING PROCEDURES

The unmasking procedures outlined below are to be initiated after being notified to do so by higher headquarters or the immediate commander. They show procedures to be used with and without the M256 chemical agent detector kit.

1. Initiate unmasking when a detector kit is available.
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Use the detector at different points in the parameter to determine the presence of chemical agents.
  - c. If no agent is detected the senior Marine present will designate two or three individual Marines to unmask for 5 minutes and then remask for 10 minutes. This is to be done in the shade.
  - d. If no symptoms appear, remainder of unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.
2. When no detector kit is available, the following unmasking procedures will be adhered to:
  - a. Disarm participants.
  - b. Two or three Marines take a deep breath, hold it, keep their eyes open, break the seal on their masks and hold the masks open for 15 seconds.
  - c. With masks resealed and cleared, the Marines are checked for symptoms for next 10 minutes. This occurs in the shade.
  - d. If no symptoms appear, the same Marines break the seal of their masks, take two or three deep breaths, then clear, and reseal their masks.
  - e. If after 10 minutes no symptoms have appeared, the same Marines unmask for five minutes, and then remask.
  - f. If after 10 more minutes no symptoms have appeared, the rest of the unit may unmask. However, they remain alert for symptoms.

NOTE: After each unmasking, always notify higher headquarters.

ENCLOSURE (1)

---

TASK: 10D.06.10 PERFORM PARTIAL CHEMICAL DECONTAMINATION

CONDITION(S): Personnel and equipment have been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is not available for complete decontamination. The hazard is such that partial decontamination is required. All personnel are maintaining a maximum MOPP.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel determine individual weapons and equipment using appropriate decontamination kits.
- .2 \_\_\_ The platoon commander determines the extent of decontamination required and decontamination priorities are established.
- .3 \_\_\_ Contaminated protective covers are removed, decontaminated, or discarded.
- .4 \_\_\_ Decontamination procedures are appropriate to items being decontaminated. (KI)
- .5 \_\_\_ Platoon personnel conduct hasty decontamination of equipment and vehicles using appropriate expedient devices.
- .6 \_\_\_ Adequacy of decontamination is determined. If inadequate:
  - a. Procedures are repeated.
  - b. Decontamination support is requested.
  - c. Risk of using equipment is accepted.
- .7 \_\_\_ Contaminated materials are discarded according to tactical SOP, marked as contaminated, and location provided to higher headquarters.
- .8 \_\_\_ The platoon commander reduces MOPP level, as feasible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS:

DECONTAMINATION PROCEDURES

1. Initial decontamination of platoon equipment, vehicles, and crew-served weapons may be accomplished by:
  - a. Removing all gross contamination with sticks or other improvised devices which are buried after use.
  - b. Utilizing M11 decontamination apparatus filled with DS2 to spray areas frequently used or touched. (Water is used to simulate DS2 in a training environment).
2. Contaminated items that may need special decontamination treatment are:
  - a. POL, food, and water containers and munitions. These are washed with soapy water, rinsed, and thoroughly air dried.
  - b. Communications equipment and other electronic equipment. Decontaminated with hot air, by weathering, or all metal parts are wiped with rags soaks with DS2 (water is used for training purposes).

ENCLOSURE (1)

c. Optical instruments are blotted with rags and then wiped with lens cleaning solution or organic solvent.

3. Adequacy of decontamination is determined using the chemical agent detector kit. If contamination is still present, decontaminate again.

4. Hasty decontamination procedures can be developed in the vehicle wash down phase and the MOPP gear exchange phase.

a. Vehicle wash down phase: Vehicle washdown should be completed within an hour for best results. If available, the most expedient manner for AAVs would be to "splash" a body of water such as a river or the ocean. The tactical situation may require an M12A1 decontamination apparatus be requested from higher headquarters.

b. MOPP gear exchange phase: MOPP gear exchange is the exchange of protective clothing as soon as the tactical situation permits or within six hours of being contaminated. Proper security must be arranged. The buddy system is utilized. The area needs to be continually checked to be sure it is free of contamination. Once decontamination procedures have been completed, personnel may unmask to provide relief from the MOPP 4 posture.

---

TASK: 10D.06.11 COORDINATE FOR COMPLETE DECONTAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT

CONDITION(S): While in support, the MCM platoon's equipment has been contaminated by a chemical agent. Emergency decontamination has been accomplished. Time is now available for complete decontamination, and support is available upon request.

STANDARDS: EVAL: Y; N; NE

- .1 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander coordinates with the decontamination unit as to time of arrival, supplies, equipment, and personnel to be furnished to his contaminated unit. The estimated time the decontamination will be completed is included in this coordination.
- .2 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander requests route clearance to personnel decontamination station/equipment decontamination station (PDS/EDS) assembly area. The platoon's advance party (personnel to augment decontamination operation and establish security) is dispatched to PDS/EDS.
- .3 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon arrives at PDS/EDS assembly area and organizes for processing.
- .4 \_\_\_\_\_ Decontamination begins as scheduled.
- .5 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon reorganizes in a clean area upwind of residual contamination and prepares for resumption of mission.
- .6 \_\_\_\_\_ The platoon commander adjusts MOPP level, as feasible.

EVALUATOR INSTRUCTIONS: None.

KEY INDICATORS: None.

ENCLOSURE (1)